

Unit one

Egypt' s Heritage

Key vocabulary

ancestor	سلف / جد	honor	يشرف / يكرم	achieve(ment)	يحقق / ينجز (انجاز)
attraction	معلم جذب سياحي	identity	الهوية	benefit	فائدة / يفيد / يستفيد
awareness	الوعي	legacy	ارث / ميراث	complex	معقد
contribute to	يساهم	preservation	حفاظ / صيانة	distant	بعيد
determination	عزم - اصرار	neighborhood	الجيرة - الحي	greatness	العظمة
courage	شجاعة	privilege	امتياز / شرف / ميزة	inherit	يرث
heritage	تراث	restore	يستعيد / يرمم	pass down	ينقل (خبرة - معرفة - عادات)
hieroglyphs	الرموز الهيروغليفية	sacrifice	يضحى / تضحية	root	جذر / اصل الشيء
routes	طريق / خط سير	survival	البقاء علي قيد	wisdom	الحكمة
progress	التقدم	inspiration (inspire)	الهام - يلهم	admiration	اعجاب
merchant	تاجر	civilization	حضارة	crossroads for trade	مفترق طرق للتجارة
monuments	اثار	traffic	المرور	pollution	تلوث
growth	النمو	pride	الفخر	mighty	ضخم - هائل
magnificent	رائع - فخم				

Important Vocabulary

archaeology	علم الآثار	homeland	الوطن	advice	نصيحة
architect	مهندس معماري	imports	واردات	advise	ينصح
heart	القلب	beat-beat- beaten	يهزم	record	يسجل
balance	توازن	lack	نقص	article	مقال
beauty	جمال	mission	مهمة / مأمورية	carve into	ينحت
beloved	عزيز علي القلب / محبب	neighborhood	حي / منطقة	creative	مبدع
citizen	مواطن	papyrus	ورق البردي	creativity	الابداع
gather	يجمع	present	هدية - حالي -	critical	نقدي
continent	قارة	proud of	فخوري	display	يعرض / يبرز
goods	بضائع	reconnect	يعيد الشمل / الاتصال	entire	كامل / تام
gold	ذهب	responsibility	مسئولية	evidence	دليل
duty	واجب / مهمة	shape	شكل / يشكل	express	يعبر عن
economy	اقتصاد	significant	مهم للغاية	figure	شكل / رقم
essential	ضروري	tourism	السياحة	gift	هدية
event	حدث	trade	التجارة	insight	بصيرة
exports	صادرات	treasure	كنز	knowledge	معرفة
funding	تمويل	urban	حضري	spices	التوابل
generation	الجيل	valuable	ذو قيمة	bridge	كوبري
grain	حبوب مثل القمح	value	قيمة / يقيم	non-fiction	غير خيالي / واقعي
harmony	انسجام / تناغم	young people	الشباب	pleasure	متعة
grand	كبير	honor	تكريم - يكرم	poet	شاعر
development	تطوير - تنمية	culture	ثقافة	scene	مشهد / مكان
immense	ضخم	host	مضيف	vision	رؤية / تطلعات /
archaeologi	عالم اثار	tourist guide	مرشد سياحي	visualize	يتصور / يصور
preserve	يحفظ	sources	مصادر	historian	مؤرخ

powerful	قوي	symbol	رمز	awareness	الوعي
lack	نقص	protect(ors)	يحمي (حماة)	challenge	يتحدى
route	خط سير	access	يصل الي	crops	محاصيل
era	عهد - عصر	strength	قوة	author	مؤلف
thinker	مفكر	reflect	يعكس	traditions	تقاليد
belief	معتقد	art	مؤلف	expression	تعبير
nation	امة	respect	احترام	figure	شخصية

Compound Nouns

historical site	موقع تاريخي / معلم اثري	national economy	الاقتصاد القومي
cultural heritage	تراث ثقافي	archaeological site	موقع اثري
ancient civilization	الحضارة القديمة	economic growth	نمو اقتصادي
national income	الدخل القومي	Nile flood	فيضان النيل
beloved homeland	وطن حبيب	heritage conservation	الحفاظ علي التراث
priceless treasures	كنز لا تقدر بثمن	natural resources	موارد طبيعية

Definitions

ancestor	a family member who lived a long time ago, like your great-grandparents or people from ancient times.	جد - سلف
attraction	a place, monument, or activity that draws visitors or tourists because it is interesting, beautiful, or historically important.	مكان جذب سياحي
awareness	knowledge or understanding of a situation, fact, or issue.	الوعي
legacy	what our ancestors leave behind for us, and what we will leave behind for our children.	ارث - تراث
sacrifice	giving up something important or valuable for the sake of something greater.	تضحية
hieroglyphs	pictures or symbols that were used by the ancient Egyptians as a system of writing.	الهيروغليفية
privilege	something good that you get which not everyone has.	ميزة - امتياز
preservation	making sure something stays safe and does not get damaged or lost.	حفظ
restore	repair or bring something back to its original, good condition.	يستعيد - يرمم
civilization	great and lasting achievements of a society	حضارة
neighborhood	a small area of a town or city where people live and interact.	الجيرة
heritage	history, traditions, and values passed down	تراث
monuments	historical buildings or structures of importance	اثار
inspire	something that motivates and encourages others	يلهم
root	- a part of a plant that develops downward into the soil. - the source or origin of a thing	جذر - اساس
inherit	to take or receive (property, etc.) that is left to one after the death of someone.	يرث

Expressions

take pride in	يقبل	build new neighborhoods	يبني احياء جديدة
gain admiration(respect)	يكتسب الاعجاب (الاحترام)	build monuments	يبني اثار
display treasures	يعرض الكنوز	build tomorrow	يبني للمستقبل
contribute to knowledge	يساهم في المعرفة	exchange ideas	يتبادل الافكار

feel pride	يشعر بالفخر	honour history	يعطي التاريخ حقة
make progress	يتقدم	honour the past	يفتخر بالماضي
fall asleep	ينام	leave a legacy	يترك ارث
gather knowledge	يجمع المعرفة	play a role in	يلعب دور في
shape the future	يشكل المستقبل	share culture	يشارك الثقافة
build a strong future	يبقي مستقبل قوي	make a plan	يعمل خطة
do revision	يقوم بمراجعة	give advice	يعطي نصيحة
prove greatness	يثبت العظمة	carve into	منقوش - منحوت
a living part	جزء حي	crossroads for trade	مفترق طرق للتجارة
feel the connection	يشعر بالارتباط	lack of awareness	نقص الوعي
stand with pride	يقف بفخر	connect with	يربط ب
depend on	يعتمد علي	focus on	يركز علي
lead to	يؤدي الي	answer ...in caracer	يجيب بلسان
call to action	دعوة للعمل	take part in	يشارك في
preserve documents	يحفظ الوثائق	pass on heritage	ينقل تراث
admire for	يعجب ب	make sacrifices	يقدم تضحيات
developed countries	دول متقدمة	raise awareness	يرفع الوعي
developing countries	دول نامية	show determination	يظهر عزيمة
gain admiration	ينال اعجاب		

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Words	Meaning	Synonyms	Antonyms	Meaning
sacrifice	تضحية	offering , donation	selfishness, self interest	أنانية
ancestor	جد / سلف	forefather, founder	descendant, successor	سليل - حفيد-
inspire	يلهم	encourage , motivate	discourage, dissuade	يحبط
heritage	تراث	inheritance , legacy	innovation, modernity	ابتكار - حداثة
preservation	الحفاظ علي	conservation - safeguard	danger – harm	خطر- اذي
progress	تقدم	advance ,development	block -decrease	يسد - يتدهور - يقل
restore	يستعيد	bring back, reconstruct	damage – decline	يدمر - يتدهور
determination	اصرار	self-confidence - will	cowardice, indifference	جبن - لا مبالاة
awareness	وعي	knowledge,consciousness	ignorance ,unconsciousness	جهل - عدم وعي
privilege	ميزة	advantage ,benefit	disadvantage, restriction	عيوب
attraction	جاذبية	fascination ,gravitation	discouragement, ugliness	احباط قبح
contribute	يساهم في	donate - grant	refuse – take away	ياخذ - يرفض
achievement	انجاز	success - triumph	failure - defeat	فشل - هزيمة
admiration	اعجاب	appreciation - respect	dislike - contempt	احتقار - كره
advance	تقدم	progress – improve	retreat- decline	تراجع- تدهور
civilization	حضارة	culture, advancement	barbarism- primitiveness	همجية
root	جذر	origin - source	branch- leaf	فرع
merchant	تاجر	trader - dealer	customer- buyer	زبون
valuable	قيم	precious , important	worthless - valueless	لا قيمة له

1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Egypt managed to restore some ancient monuments. The synonym of "restore" is ".....".
a) replay b) renew c) reinvent d) repeat e) reconstruct
2. The ancient Egyptians' legacy inspires all of us to build our country. "Inspire" can be replaced by.....
a. ruin b. discourage c. encourage d. motivate e. damage
3. Building our country shows our determination to progress. The synonyms of "determination" are.....
a. hesitation b. indifference c. persistence d. self-confidence e. cowardice
4. GEM is a major tourist attraction in Egypt. The antonyms of "attraction" are.....
a. fascination b. gravitation c. discouragement d. ugliness e. beauty
5. "Parents make many sacrifices for their children. Other words for "sacrifice" are.....
a. selfishness b. contribution c. giving up d. self-confidence e. ugliness
6. It is a privilege to live in the country. Synonyms of "privilege"
a. advantage b. disadvantage c. honor d. unconsciousness e. disrespect

Language Notes

1- rise / rose / risen (I) لا يليها مفعول

= (go up, increase يزداد , stand up ينهض / يقف , get out of bed يستيقظ)

Oil prices are rising all the time. يزداد

Smoke rose from the chimney. يتصاعد

The sun rises at around 6 a.m. تشرق

- rise (n.) (زيادة في الأجور / ارتفاع / increase / increase in wages)

There was a sudden rise in temperature yesterday. ارتفاع

He got a 10% rise last year. زيادة في الأجر

- raise / raised / raised (T) يليها مفعول

• Raise your hand if you know the answer. يرفع

• The government does its best to raise the standard of living. يرفع مستوي المعيشة

• The concert raised a lot of money for cancer research. يجمع

• Raise your voice ارفع صوتك

• Raise hopes/ fears/ suspicions ... يثير الخوف/الشك

• Raise a subject / question / point يطرح للمناقشة موضوع أو نقطة أو يثير تساؤل

- arise / arose / arisen (بدون مفعول) = begin to happen يظهر / يحدث

• A lot of problems usually arise at work.

- Arise / arose / arisen (بدون مفعول) = begin to happen يظهر / يحدث

- arouse / aroused / aroused (يليها مفعول) / يوقظ (يثير للمشاعر والأحاسيس)

• Her behavior aroused the suspicions of the police. يثير شكوك

Test yourself

1. I couldn't hear my teacher, so I asked him to (rise- raise-arise-arouse) his voice.
2. The students (rise - raise - arise - arouse) their hands when they want to to answer a question.
3. Rivers always (rise - raise - arise - arouse) after the rain.
4. When I saw my father, I (rose - raised - arose - aroused) to receive him.
5. We must (rise - arouse - arise -raise) our soldiers to fight with enemies.
6. Some learning difficulties (rise -arouse -arise) from the way children are taught at school.
7. The concert will (rise - raise - arise -arouse)money for local charities.
8. Parents want to (raise -arouse - rise-arise)their children well.
9. The (raise- rise- arouse-arise) in prices is a global problem.
10. Students should (rise - raise- arise-arouse) early on school days.

2.invent يكتشف مكان نعرفه ولكن لم نزره **- explore** يكتشف شيء مخبي **- discover** يخترع شيء جديد

Test yourself

1. Scientists (invented - discovered) a new cure for cancer.
2. Gerham Bell (invented - discovered) the telephone in ile last century.
3. The (invention- exploration) of space has contributed to improving the aspects of life on the earth.

3- profession وظيفة محددة (اسم يعد) **- job** مهنة تحتاج تعليم أو تدريب متخصص
- work عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد) **- career** الحياة المهنية (على المدى الطويل)

- 1- Teaching is a noble **profession** that builds our future.
- 2- He got a **job** as a driver in a big company.
- 3-She left her **work** early because she was ill.
4. She built a **successful career** in education over thirty years.

4. historical تاريخي (متعلق بالتاريخ) **-historic** تاريخي (قديم/حدث مهم)

- 1-It is important to look at the novel in **its historical context**.
- 2-The government restored some **historic buildings**.

5- along (adv) (prep) على طول/بمحاذاة (تستخدم مع الأماكن أو الطرق) **(a) long (adj) + اسم** (فترة زمنية أو مسافة) طويل

- 1-We walked **along the road** and enjoyed the view.
- 2- It's been a **long day**, and I'm very tired.
- 3- They walked a **long distance** to reach the village.

6- work with يعمل مع **- work for** يعمل لدي **- work in** يعمل في **- work as** يعمل (بوظيفة) **- work on** يعمل على (إنجاز)

- 1-All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
- 2- My brother **works for** a big company in the city.
- 3- Egypt always **works for** peace in the Middle East.
- 4- I hope to **work in** medical research when I'm older.
- 5- I **work in** Al-Salam Company, which is in October City.
- 6-My grandfather **worked as** a journalist in Al-Ahram Newspaper.
- 7-The writer said that he **was working on** a new novel.

Reading

Egypt is a land with a heart that has been beating for thousands of years. We are proud to call it our home. It is a place where the past and the present meet in harmony. Egypt has always played an important role .in the world. Our ancestors built one of the greatest civilizations in history. They gave the world knowledge in writing, mathematics, and medicine. The hieroglyphs carved into temple walls were not just beautiful art; they were a way to record history. The Library of Alexandria once gathered knowledge from all over the world, making Egypt a center of learning.

Egypt was also a crossroads for trade . Merchants traveled along the Nile and across the deserts, carrying goods such as gold, spices, papyrus , and grain. Our land was a bridge where people met and exchanged ideas, making Egypt a source of inspiration for many civilizations.

Today, Egypt continues to grow. Our cities rise with modern buildings, while our historical monuments still stand with pride . We are building new roads, bridges, and neighborhoods that show the world our determination to progress . From the Pyramids of Giza to the Grand Egyptian Museum, we continue to honor our history while shaping our future.

We take pride in our country, not only for its beauty, but also because we understand the sacrifices of our ancestors. We work hard to make it greater for generations to come. Every citizen has a role to play – protecting our heritage , contributing to our economy , and sharing our culture with the world.

Listening

Host : Welcome back to our story. Today, we're talking to Dr. Mona Hassan, an archaeologist who recently led a team to restore parts of the Philae Temple.

Host : Dr. Mona, thank you for joining us.

Dr. Mona : Thank you. It's a privilege to be here.

Host : Your work on Philae is a powerful symbol. Can you tell us why preserving our heritage is so important?

Dr. Mona : Of course. When we restore a historical site, we're not just fixing old stones; we're reconnecting with our past. Our ancestors left us a rich legacy, from the pyramids to the temples of Upper Egypt. This heritage is the core of our national identity. It reminds us of who we are, where we came from, and the greatness we are capable of. It's a source of immense pride for every Egyptian.

Host : It sounds like more than a job; it's a mission. What do you think is the biggest challenge to preserving our heritage today?

Dr. Mona : The challenges are many—from urban development to climate change. But perhaps the biggest is the lack of awareness among our youth.

Many young people don't realize the value of these treasures. Our job is to inspire them, to make them see that a thousand-year-old temple is not just a tourist attraction—it's a living part of our story. We need to encourage them to visit these sites, to learn the stories, and to feel the connection.

Host : That's a great point. You're inspiring them to become the next generation of protectors. Thank you for your valuable work, Dr. Mona.

Lesson 3-4-5

Listening

Long ago, people lived in ways very different from today. They depended mainly on the land, growing crops, and raising animals for survival. Families lived close to nature, often using simple tools and working together to produce what they needed.

Communities were small and traditions were passed down through stories, songs, and daily practices. As time moved forward, inventions began to change human life. The discovery of writing allowed people to record knowledge and history. The use of metal tools made farming and building easier. Great civilizations rose, building cities, temples, and trade routes that connected distant lands.

While our ancestors were struggling hard to survive, their minds never stopped thinking till progress happened step by step. Now, life has become much faster and more complex. Technology allows us to communicate across the world in seconds, travel long distances in hours, and access information with a single click. Yet, the wisdom and lessons from long ago still shape who we are.

By remembering the past and learning from it, we can build a future that respects history while embracing progress.

Reading

Pride is not something that appears in a single day. It grows slowly, like a tree, from strong roots of history, culture, and shared values. For Egyptians, these roots run deep and continue to give us strength. Our country is one of the oldest and greatest civilizations in the world, and its story continues to inspire not only Egyptians, but people everywhere. True pride is built through connection to the past and responsibility for the future. In ancient times, Egypt was a leader in human progress and knowledge. Our ancestors

built the mighty pyramids and the magnificent temples along the Nile – monuments that still amaze the world today. They developed writing systems, advanced mathematics, and important medical knowledge. These achievements were not only for Egypt; they became gifts to the entire world, proving the greatness and creativity of our people. Their heritage shows that Egyptians have always worked with vision and determination. Egypt was also a center for culture and learning. Great authors, poets, and thinkers shared their ideas and recorded their knowledge in writing.

Their works reflected the values, traditions, and beliefs of the Egyptian society and influenced people for generations. Through stories, wisdom, and art, Egypt became a place where culture was preserved and celebrated. This role, as a home for creativity and expression, gave our nation respect and admiration from other civilizations. True pride begins when we understand our history, protect our culture, and work hard for the future.

It is not only about what we have inherited, but also about what we create for the generations to come. When we honor our past, stay united, and build our tomorrow with determination, we stand exactly where pride begins

Exercises

1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- Our ancestors built a great civilization. Two opposites of ancestor are.....
a. founder b. forefather c. president d. descendant e. successor
- The preservation of our civiliation is very important. The synonyms of preservation are.....
a. conservation b. conversation c. ruin d. maintenance e. damage
- Our youth should have awareness of the dangers surrounding us. Awareness is the antonyms of.....
a. knowledge b. information c. understanding d. ignorance e. misunderstanding
- The progress of our nation depends on the hard work. Progress means....
a. decrease b. decline c. advance d. development e. block
- We work hard to restore the glories of our ancestors. Two antonyms of "restore" are ...
a. ruin b. reconstruct c. bring back d. discrimination e. damage
- She shows great determination to achieve her goals. "Determination" can be replaced by.....
a) hesitation b) resolve c) doubt d) firmness e) weakness
- We never forget our homeland. What does "homeland" mean here?
a) exile b) motherland c) native land d) abroad e) foreign land
- Our ancestors built the pyramids. The Antonyms of "ancestors" are.....
a) children b) descendants c) forefathers d) elders e) successors
- We should teach our children to live in harmony. The word "harmony" means.....
a) balance b) chaos c) disagreement d) conflict e) unity
- We should encourage students to achieve their goals. The antonyms of "encourage" are.....
a) hinder b) support c) motivate d) prevent e) dishearten
- The preservation of our heitage is important. "Preservation" means
a) loss b) safeguarding c) damage d) protection e) neglect
- The pyramids are a symbol of the ancient Egyptian civilization. "Civilization" means.....
a) culture b) development c) society d) destruction e) chaos
- We should always people who suffer.
a) support b) ignore c) disturb d) encourage e) harm
- The government plans to restore the old monuments. The antonyms of "restore" are
a) destroy b) separate c) fix d) damage e) renovate
- She felt great anxiety before her operation . The antonyms of "anxiety" are
a) wealth b) calmness c) encouragement d) relaxation e) tension
- The children tried to gather flowers from the garden. The synonyms of "gather" are.....
a) collect b) bring together c) scatter d) separate e) join
- The development of technology has changed our world. The antonyms of "development" are
a) progress b) difference c) decline d) decrease e) advancement

Exercises

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. A restaurant has been built at the where three roads meet. It will serve a lot of people.
a) crossroads b) crosswords c) site d) neighborhood
2. Our national is shaped by our history, culture, and traditions.
a) wealth b) homeland c) economy d) identity
3. Students learn about different..... in history lessons.
a) homelands b) languages c) civilizations d) schools
4. Egyptians showed greatwhen their football team played well in the current World Cup.
a) pride b) conflict c) career d) warning
5. Painting, music, and sculpture are all forms of that express ideas and feelings.
a) art b) medicine c) tradition d) knowledge
6. Many Egyptians who work abroad miss their
a) homeland b) school c) farm d) market
7. All the should defend our country if it is attacked by enemies.
a) neighbors b) merchants c) historians d) citizens
8. To understand a new word, try to guess the meaning from the of the sentence.
a) culture b) context c) site d) heritage
9. Most weddings include flowers, lights, and other beautiful for the celebration.
a) record b) knowledge c) decorations d) civilizations
10. With strong, the runner was able to complete the race although he was sick.
a) disability b) determination c) wealth d) economy
11. Most countries work hard to build schools, hospitals, and new roads.
a) historical b) national c) local d) developing
12. Students from different countries often ideas in class.
a) invent b) exchange c) record d) charge
13. The Arab should unite to overcome the challenges they face.
a) cultures b) nations c) areas d) neighborhoods
14. Egypt is a for trade. The Suez Canal attracts companies from all over the world.
a) nation b) news c) bridge d) crossroads
15. Students should learn about their national as it connects them strongly to past traditions.
a) generation b) center c) heritage d) harmony
16. We should the Nile because it keeps the production of food .
a) contribute b) think c) preserve d) shape
17. Strong countries grow rich because they encourage production and.....
a) trade b) moments c) violence d) friendship
18. Om Sham el Nesseim ,most families..... in parks to celebrate it.
a) gather b) invent c) carve d) shape
19. Every has a duty to protect the environment and keep it clean for the future.
a) homeland b) heritage c) citizen d) generation
20. Farmers store different kinds of such as rice, wheat, and corn for the winter season.
a) stones b) monuments c) grains d) materials
21. Ancient Egyptians used.....to keep their history . They wrote it on the walls of temples.
a) hieroglyphs b) films c) records d) knowledge
22. Good understanding creates among people and makes them feel happy, and close together.
a) neighborhood b) pride c) harmony d) identity
23. study old documents to keep the history of ancient civilizations carefully.
a) Historians b) Citizens c) Merchants d) Neighbors
24. The Pyramids are monuments that attract millions of tourists to Egypt every year.
a) proud b) historical c) unidentified d) developing
25. Many Egyptians living abroad dream of returning to their..... to see family and friends.
a) homeland b) site c) center d) crossroads
26. Schools must raise students' about protecting the Nile and keeping the environment clean.
a) importance b) heritage c) awareness d) age
27. Our parents must be..... because they do their best to live well.
a) honor b) protect c) preserve d) restore
28. Dr. Zewail left us a remarkable in the field of chemistry.

- a) mercy b) legacy c) system d) policy
29. I found this wallet. Does it belong you?
- a) of b) with c) to d) for
30. Modern technology it easier for doctors to treat patients and save their lives.
- a) makes b) takes c) does d) has
31. Teachers play a in preparing students for the future and society.
- a) game b) role c) generation d) match
32. Employees may enjoy the of working from home two days a week.
- a) problem b) privilege c) difficulty d) weakness
33. Medicine is a respected that requires many years of study and training.
- a) job b) work c) profession d) works
34. In my opinion, the of any strong relationship is trust and loyalty.
- a) edge b) distance c) end d) core
35. I couldn't the driver of the car which hit my sister.
- a) identify b) identity c) identifiable d) unidentified
36. The presentation was and clear to understand.
- a) demonstration b) demonstrative c) demonstrator d) demonstrate
37. The at the exhibition explained the benefits of the new product.
- a) demonstrative b) demonstrate c) demonstration d) demonstrator
38. Social media can help people reconnect old friends they haven't seen for years.
- a) on b) with c) to d) in
39. All citizens must contribute keeping the streets clean and protecting the environment.
- a) on b) with c) to d) in
40. The Pyramids are a special form ancient Egyptian architecture admired all over the world.
- a) on b) with c) of d) in
41. It is advisable for all of our youth to every opportunity that comes their way.
- a) embrace b) leave c) miss d) refuse
42. Many people to balance their work and family life.
- a) arrest b) struggle c) affect d) refuse
43. With his army, the king won many battles and protected his nation from enemies.
- a) mighty b) medical c) deep d) cultural
44. Tourists looked with great at the Pyramids as they are huge and beautiful monuments.
- a) wisdom b) vision c) progress d) admiration
45. Today we use technology like computers and satellites to make life easier and faster.
- a) mighty b) deep c) advanced d) cultural
46. The magician could the children with his clever tricks and movements on the stage.
- a) learn b) grow c) amaze d) respect
47. We respect our ancestors because they us to be successful in our modern age.
- a) protected b) inspired c) appeared d) amazed
48. Naguib Mahfouz was a famous Egyptian who wrote many novels and won the Nobel Prize.
- a) poet b) thinker c) author d) leader
49. Healthy food and regular exercise can strength to the body and help students succeed.
- a) make b) give c) borrow d) do
50. Hieroglyphics were the first writing in Egypt, used to record history and culture.
- a) type b) system c) idea d) form
51. The tourists were when they saw the pyramids shining brightly under the morning sun.
- a) amaze b) amazing c) amazed d) amazement
52. The scientists made an discovery that helped doctors cure dangerous diseases .
- a) amaze b) amazing c) amazed d) amazement
53. To be always successful, we need to move and leave the past behind.
- a) forward b) back c) down d) around
54. Every citizen is responsible protecting the environment and keeping the streets clean.
- a) in b) at c) with d) for
55. With the help of the internet, it's easy to information quickly.
- a) exceed b) join c) charge d) access
56. Smoke began to from the factory after the fire started.
- a) raise b) rise c) arise d) arouse
57. The manager decided to salaries to keep the employees motivated.
- a) arise b) arouse c) rise d) raise

58. My brother found a new as a driver in a big company.
 a) function b) job c) career d) work
59. There are many trees planted the main street in our town.
 a) alone b) belong c) a long d) along
60. Did you know that Graham Bell the telephone?
 a) invented b) discovered c) explored d) built
61. Children often like to caves and forests when they go camping.
 a) invent b) discover c) explore d) explain
62. When we fix an old building and make it strong again, we it.
 a) preserve b) restore c) trade d) protect

Lesson three and four

1. Old like statues and tombs tell us about the beliefs of ancient Egyptians.
 a) poems b) monuments c) gifts d) stories
2. The Nile is a river that helped Egyptians build their civilization.
 a) short b) cultural c) mighty d) modern
3. Our music, language, and traditions are a part of our great Egyptian
 a) wisdom b) heritage c) belief d) kingdom
4. The factory can over 1000 items per hour due to the new machines.
 a) fix b) reduce c) produce d) save
5. Egyptians felt great when Ahmed El Gendy won an Olympic medal.
 a) wisdom b) respect c) vision b) pride
6. Winning the gold medal was a great that made the athlete proud.
 a) idea b) achievement c) story d) failure
7. The Ancient Egyptians had strong in the powers of nature.
 a) beliefs b) values c) roots d) stories
8. Sometimes clouds suddenly in the sky, bringing rain to the lands.
 a) disappear b) show c) grow d) appear
9. Great inventions always need as scientists must think of new ideas and solutions.
 a) creativity b) history c) roots d) beliefs
10. Music and traditions are part of the life of every country in the world.
 a) mighty b) medical c) cultural d) practical
11. Scientists work hard to new machines that help people.
 a) grow b) develop c) amaze d) protect
12. I've always learned from my grandfather's in different situations.
 a) expression b) vision c) gift d) wisdom
13. Many people in villages still depend on for a living.
 a) fishing b) technology c) progress d) farming
14. Every invention starts with a/an that grows in the mind of a person.
 a) idea b) belief c) gift d) expression
15. Parents can their children by teaching them respect and hard work.
 a) inherit b) amaze c) influence d) protect
16. Great leaders can young people to work hard and achieve big dreams.
 a) inspire b) protect c) respect d) share
17. The teacher asked the students to answer the questions in
 a) speech b) talk c) writing d) voice
18. Egyptians' love for their homeland will always run in their hearts.
 a) wide b) deep c) far d) strong
19. The workers decided to stay during difficult times to develop their company.
 a) open b) strong c) united d) proud
20. Many doctors help their local by giving free medical care.
 a) society b) community c) civilization d) nation
21. The engineer is very busy working a new bridge project this month.
 a) in b) on c) for d) with

22. My manager had a strong in my abilities and skills.
a) belief b) believe c) believable d) believer
23. The story he told was not because everyone knew he was joking.
a) belief b) believer c) believe d) believable
24. Cairo is a big cultural center art, music, and learning in the Arab world.
a) off b) on c) for d) with
25. The teacher explained that history has a connection our daily lives.
a) at b) on c) to d) with
26. Scientists try to create new machines helping people live more easily.
a) on b) for c) to d) with
27. Online shopping is because people can buy things from home at any time.
a) inappropriate b) convenient c) unsuitable d) superficial
28. Scientists must their ideas with facts so people can trust their discoveries.
a) prove b) deny c) conceal d) confuse
30. The old man was respected for his; he always gave fair and helpful advice.
a) stupidity b) sense c) wisdom d) powerful
31. Schools should teach students about their national..... to feel proud of their ancestors.
a) heritage b) mathematics c) foods d) society
32. The government tries to restore ancient as they are important for Egypt's history.
a) values b) monuments c) roots d) stories
33. Egyptians..... national holidays with music, and beautiful decorations in the streets.
a) respect b) protect c) show d) celebrate
34. Mr and Mrs Fahmy gave their son a wonderful for his birthday.
a) gift b) story c) belief d) value
35. Modern schools help to education and give students the chance to study and succeed.
a) amaze b) share c) improve d) stand
36. Books are a great source of because they give us facts, stories, and many useful ideas.
a) knowledge b) values c) roots d) history
37. A good guides people, protects the nation, and makes fair decisions.
a) author b) poet c) citizen d) leader
38. Doctors and nurses give people care in hospitals to help them recover quickly.
a) medical b) scientific c) cultural d) cultural
39. A..... is a large group of people who share the same language, culture, and land together.
a) nation b) citizen c) civilization d) community
40. Ahmed Shawqi is a famous Egyptian writing many poems that still inspire people today.
a) actor b) author c) thinker d) poet
41. Due to traffic jam, the driver decided to take a different
a) steep b) route c) root d) edge
42. New inventions are the result of research that uses experiments and tests to find facts.
a) scientific b) medical c) unknown d) cultural
43. The island was so that it took two days to reach it by boat.
a) close b) distant c) near d) wide
44. The mirror can your face clearly, just like water shows the image of the sky above.
a) share b) respect c) stand d) reflect
45. Students should spend their time by studying hard and reading books.
d) proudly c) deeply b) slowly a) wisely

THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE الماضي البسيط

1- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث انتهى في الماضي في وقت محدد

- She **visited** London in 2010.
- I **was** in Alexandria a month ago.
- At the age of seven, my parents **took** me to Jordan.

2- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدثين متتابعين في الماضي .

- When he **had** an idea, he **wrote** a short story.
- I **went** to the park and **met** my friends.

3- يعبر عن عادة في الماضي و غير مستمرة الآن.

- I **played** tennis every day **when** I **was** younger.
- I **always ate** breakfast before I **went** to school.
- She **cooked** lunch **every day last week**.

4 - يعبر عن الحقائق الماضية وعن الافعال المنتهية (الموتى) وعن الحدث الثانى :

- Shakspeare **wrote** Hamlet
- Colombus **discovered** America.

- ملحوظة هامة : نستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس الماضي المستمر إذا كان الفعل يعبر عن حالة. (be)

- I **saw** Ali **while** he **was** at the sports club. (NOT: was being)

5 - يعبر عن سرد الاحداث فى الماضى مع : **first, then, next , at last, finally,**

- Ali **found** a bag ,then he **went** to the police station.

6 - يستخدم لوصف حدث استمر لفترة في الماضي و لكنه غير موجود الآن

- She **lived** in Zagazig **for seven years**.
- They **were** in London from Monday to Thursday of last week.
- Between 1846 and 1851 , millions of people travelled to the USA.

7- في الحالة الثانية من (If) الشرطية.

- **If** he **helped** us, we **would win**.

8 - يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ليعبر عن أحداث مستبعدة أو مستحيلة الحدوث في المضارع أو المستقبل.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1- I wish + فاعل + ماضى بسيط | - I wish the Egyptian team played well today . |
| 2- I wish mum wasn't ill . | - It is time father arrived now . |
| 2- It's time + فاعل + ماضى بسيط | - I'd rather Ali didn't come tonight . |
| - It's time he paid the bill . | |
| 3- I 'd rather + فاعل + ماضى بسيط | |
| - I would rather she helped him . | |

يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الكلمات الآتية:

- yesterday - ago - last.... - in the past - once / once upon a time** ذات مرة **one day - in 2007 - the other day** مؤخرًا **from + سنة + to + سنة** **When I was..... - How long ago = When - for**
- I last ate **fish when** I was **in Alex**.

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the correct answers:

- Last week, I.....some flowers in my garden.
a. planted b. was planting c. had planted d. plan
- I wish my friendswith me now.
a. are b. were c. had been d. have been
- I wish my friendswith me yesterday.

- | | | | |
|---|------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| a. are | b. were | c. had been | d. have been |
| 4.at school yesterday ? | | | |
| a. Did you | b. Were you | c. Have you been | d. Will you be |
| 5. A week....., I went to Cairo. | | | |
| a. last | b. in the past | c. ago | d. once |
| 6. Once IAhmed, I gave him his present. | | | |
| a. meet | b. have met | c. met | d. meet |
| 7. Ali travelled to Sharm..... | | | |
| a. the next day | b. everyday | c. d.now | d. the other day |
| 8.....Nada went to Zagazig was in June. | | | |
| a. Last time | b. The last time | c.Last | d. Other day |
| 9. He studied hard.....he answered the homework. | | | |
| a. when | b. while | c.then | d. but |
| 10. It.....time he slept now. | | | |
| a. was | b. has been | c. is | d. will be |
| 11. If I.....you , I would go to the doctor. | | | |
| a. were | b. am | c. had been | d. will be |
| 12. When I was In Alex. , I.....in the sea every day. | | | |
| a. swim | b. swam | c. was swimming | d. swims |
| 13. EgyptIsreal and restored Sinai. | | | |
| a. beat | b. beaten | c. beats | d. has beaten |
| 14. He was sad since heof his failure to get the licence. | | | |
| a. informed | b. was informed | c. has inormed | d. has been inormed |
| 15. Our house.....in 2010. | | | |
| a. was built | b. built | c. is built | d. has been built |

اعتاد أن used to + inf.

يستخدم للتعبير عن التناقض بين العادات أو المواقف في الماضي والحاضر :

- I **used to eat** breakfast before I **went** to school. (الان لم يعد يأكل الافطار قبل الذهاب للمدرسه)
- He **used to swim** every day. Now he **doesn't** (swim).
- He **used to be** late all the time. Now, he **isn't** (late).

مصدر didn't use to +

وفي حالة النفي نستخدم:

- I **didn't use to play** computer games, but **now I do**. (الان يلعب هذه الالعاب)
- I **never used to play** computer games, but **now I do**
- I **used not to play** (**used to not play**) computer games, but now I do.

مصدر use to + فاعل did +

وفي حالة السؤال نستخدم:

- **Did you use to walk** to school? - Where **did you use to live**?

يستخدم **no longer** بدلا من **used to** ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط:

- He **used to smoke**. = He **no longer smokes**. = He **doesn't smoke any longer / any more**.

يستخدم **any more / any longer** بدلا من **used to** مع نفي الفعل في المضارع البسيط وتأتي في نهاية الجملة:

- He **used to smoke**. = He **doesn't smoke any more**.

used to = It was my habit to ... / I was in / got the habit of / had the habit of.....

- كما يمكن التعبير عن عادة في الماضي باستخدام (**was / were used to v.ing**).

- I **was used to eating** breakfast before I **went** to school.

Note:

إذا كانت بمعنى يستخدم يأتي بعدها المصدر **is used to +**

- The pen **is used to write** with
- The **pan is used to cook** food.
- The thermometer **is used to measure** (**for measuring**) temperature

- The tractor **الجرار** is used to plough (for ploughing) the field .

في حاله المضارع

(be / get / become) + (used to / accustomed to) + (v + ing)

- I'm used to playing football.

- He is used coming on time .

-He is accustomed to drinking black coffee. - She becomes used to eating vegetables.

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the correct answers:

1- When I was a little child, I watch cartoons.

a. used to b. used c. didn't use to d. a & b

2- When I was a little child, I watch cartoons.I hated them.

a. used to b. never use c. didn't use to d. a & b

3.Nada used to wear glasses but now she

a) does b) doesn't c) isn't d) didn't

4. He used to be thin, but now he.....

a) isn't b) doesn't c) wasn't d) didn't

5- When I was younger, Idoing the housework on my own.

a. would b. used to c. used for d. was used to

6. He no longer studies as he

a. would do b. used to do c. is used to doing d. never used to do

7.My fatherin Alexandria when he was a boy

a) lived b) used to live c) is used to living d) use to live

8.A knife is used tothings.

a) cut b) cutting c) cuts d) be cut

9. My brother is used tothe poor.

a) help b) helping c) helped d) helps

10. Heeating out as he doesn't enjoy cooking at home.

a) is used to b) was used c) is used for d) no longer

اعتاد أن would + inf.

نستخدم (المصدر + used to / المصدر + would) للحديث عن أحداث متكررة في الماضي

-A lot of people would / used to live in the desert.

- When I was young , I always used to help my mother.

-When Ali was nine , he would always help his mother.

-When she was young , she (would) (used to) cry easily .

-My mother used to / would buy me nice clothes when I was young.

الاختلاف بين (used to - would)

١-نستخدم (used to) ولا نستخدم (would) لوصف حالة الماضية أي مع الأفعال التقريرية (أفعال الحواس والشعور و..... مثل:

be/ have/ love / hate /enjoy / want / wish /weigh / hear / cost /deserve / understand / feel

I used to be lazy .

-We used to have a car .

He used to enjoy travelling.

-They used to own a car.

2- نستخدم (used to) ولا نستخدم (would) في النفي (انظر النقطة 5) والاستفهام

Did you use to play football ?

- I didn't use to get up early on Saturdays

3- نستخدم (used to) ولا نستخدم (would) مع أحداث استمرت في الماضي لفترة من الوقت ولم تعد تحدث

(I used to live in Cairo, but I moved to Alexandria last year (don't use would here)

4 - أن would لا يمكن استخدامها للتعبير عن الحالة إلا إذا كان الزمن محدد في الماضي ومذكور في أول الجملة.

على عكس **used to** تستخدم في بداية الجملة أو منتصفها دون أي تغيير بالمعنى

- I **used to** play football every weekend **when I was 11 years**.
- When I **was** a child, I **would play** football every weekend.
- When I **was** little, I **would** get up and watch a lot of TV.

5- يمكن استخدام **would** في وجود ظرف من ظروف التكرار مثل (**wouldn't often or wouldn't always**)
-When we were in Sharm, we **wouldn't swim** in the sea **very often**.

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the correct answers:

- We have a car.
 a. would b. used to c. is used to d. wouldn't
- My uncle.....to work when he was young, but nowadays he uses his car.
 a. would always walk b. didn't use to walk c. is used to walking d. always walks
- When we were children, we..... live abroad.
 a. would b. used to c. were used to d. a & b
- I every weekend when I was 11 years.
 a. would swim b. used to swim c. should swim d. a & b
- When I was a child, I every weekend.
 a. would swim b. used to swim c. should swim d. a & b
- When I was a student, Iplay tricks on my classmates.
 a. would often b. wouldn't c. would never d. a & c
- Ia taxi to school yesterday because I missed the school bus.
 a. took b. would take c. used to take d. used to taking
- Wein Europe for fifteen years.
 a. lived b. would live c. used to live d. used to living
- When I was younger Ienjoy swimming, but now I really love it!
 a) didn't used to b) didn't use to c) wasn't d) hadn't
- He.....spending all his free time writing.
 a) used to b) no longer c) doesn't use d) is used to
- Hetaking a nap after dinner every evening.
 a. used to b. had a habit of c. was in the habit of d. b & c
- Itsmoke a cigarette once he wakes up.
 a. used to b. had a habit of c. was in the habit of d. was his habit to

THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE الماضي المستمر

Form

was / were + V. ing.....

- Ali **was watching** a film.

- They **were cooking** lunch.

١ - يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا لفترة أو في وقت محدد في الماضي

- **Between six and half past six this morning, I was having** breakfast.
- Tarek **was eating** dinner **at noon yesterday**.
- I **was travelling** to Cairo **at eight o'clock (yesterday) this morning**.

المجهول

was / were + being +p.p

Our house **was being cleaned** in the morning.

يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الكلمات الآتية :

While بينما - **as** بينما - **just as** في اللحظة التي - **when** عندما - **all day yesterday = the whole day yesterday** طوال الوقت - **all the time** طوال اليوم - **yesterday morning / at noon**

٢ - يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع كلمات مثل (**While / when / As / Just as**) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في

1- While / As / When / Just as (فاعل) ماضي مستمر , ماضي بسيط (الحدثان تقاطعا)

-While I was sleeping, a thief entered the house.

= As (Just as)I was sleeping, a thief entered the house.

٣- يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع While / when / As / Just as للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي

2- (While / As / When / Just as) ماضي مستمر ... , ... ماضي مستمر (الحدثان لم يتقاطعا)

-(While / As / Just as) my mother was making the dinner, I was looking after my sister.

- While I was studying, my father was reading a paper.

- While she was walking in the street, she met one of her old friends.

٤- إذا لم يأتي بعد while فاعل يأتي بعدها (v .ing) بشرط ان يكون فاعل الجملتان واحد او اختلفت الفاعلين فلا يجوز اضافته ing

- While playing , I fell down.

-While I was waiting (waiting) for the bus , a car hit a boy.

Choose

- While (playing - he was playing) football, he scored a goal.

- While (playing - he was playing) football, Ali was studying English.

٥ - يمكن استخدام during بدلا من while و يأتي بعدها noun

- While he was playing the game, he got hurt.

- During the game, he got hurt. = He got hurt during the game.

- During the party, I met an old friend.

- During my lunchtime, the phone rang.

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the correct answers:

1. From 10 to half past eleven yesterday, we a football match

a. watch b. watched c.were watching d. were being watched

2- From 9 to ha yesterday, a football match

a. watch b. watched c.was watching d. was being watched

3. From 10 to 12 yesterday, we a football match

a. watch b. watched c.were watching d. were being watched

4. While Ihome, I saw some of my friends.

a. walking b. was walking c. had walked d. walk

5.....he was a student, he was writing short stories.

a. After b. As soon as c.While d. On

6- While the new plan, Sami noticed that it was too long.

a. revise b. revising c. revises d.revised

6- While football, some friends were watching him.

a. playing b. he was playing c. was playing d.a & b

7- watching a film, I fell asleep.

a. While b.When c. During d. a & b

8- the film, I fell asleep.

a. While b.When c. During d. a & b

9. As I was doing my homework, Huda.....to music.

a.listened b. was listening c. had listened d. will listen

10. Just as I was speaking on the phone, Huda.....suddenly.

a. was crying b. cried c. had cried d.crying

-When (فاعل) ماضي مستمر , ماضي بسيط

-When (فاعل) ماضي مستمر , ماضي بسيط

يمكن أن يأتي بعد **when** ماضى بسيط ثم ماضى مستمر أو العكس حسب المعنى :

- I was studying **English** when the **lights** went out.
- The **lights** went out when I was studying **English**.
- When I was having a **shower** , the **phone** rang

يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع **when** فى الماضى البسيط :

- يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع **when** فى الماضى البسيط إذا كانا متتابعين و لم يقطع احدهما الآخر
- When he **arrived** , he **found** the door locked.

- يمكن استخدام **On** بدلا من **when** و يأتي بعدها **V. ing** أو اسم

- On arriving / his arrival, he **found** the door locked.

-الفعل بعد **and** يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل الذي يسبقها:

- He **was writing** a letter **and listening** to some music.

□ لاحظ عدم استخدام **to be** فى الماضى المستمر:

- **While / When** I **was** at school, I **worked** to a plan.

يمكن أن يأتي بعد **because** ماضى مستمر و الفعل الآخر ماضى بسيط :

- Magdy **couldn't hear** the phone **because** he **was having** a shower.

عادة لا نستخدم الماضى المستمر مع الأفعال التى تصف حالة، شعور، حاسة، رأى، فهم، ادراك ، ملكية ولكن نستخدم معها ماضى بسيط لأنها تعبر عن حالة ثابتة ودائمة :

- لاحظ عدم استخدام الأفعال الدالة على الحالة فى الماضى المستمر.

- She (**seemed** – ~~was seeming~~) ill when I **visited** her.
- While I **was** at home, someone **knocked** on the door. (NOT: **was being**)

لاحظ : لا يستخدم **V.To.Be** فى الاستمرار ولكن نكتفى بـ **was / were** فقط .

أفعال الحواس قد تأتي فى الاستمرار اذا جاءت بمعنى مؤقت و متغير مثل:

- Where are you? - **I'm tasting** the food. - Why **are you smelling** the food?_

- هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بـ (**v.ing**) و تستخدم بدلا من جملة كاملة مبنية للمعلوم.

- **As Sara was walking** to town yesterday, she saw two of her friends.
- **Walking to town** yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.
- **As Rami was running down** the road, he fell over and hurt his back.
- **Running down the road** , Rami fell over and hurt his back._

Quickly – Quickly- Quickly Test yourself

Choose the correct answers:

1. When I was in Sharm El-Sheikh, Ia lot.
a. have sunbathed b. was sunbathing c. would sunbathe d. sunbathed
- 2- I never him late at night when he was on holiday.
a. phoned b.phoning c.phones d.phone
- 3- When my homework, I fell asleep.
a. did b.doing c. was doing d. was being done
- 4- I was staying in Zagazig, I made a lot of friends.
a. While b. When c. During d. a & b
- 5- I was staying in Zagazig I made a lot of friends.
a. While b. When c. During d. a & b
- 6- my stay, I made a lot of friends.
a. While b. When c. During d. a & b
- 7- staying, I made a lot of friends.

- a. While I was b. While c. When d. a, b & c
 8- seeing the fire, I cried out.
 a. While b. On c. When d. As
 9. He didn't hear me because hemusic.
 a. listened b. was listening c. is listening d. had listened
 10. He couldn't hear the ringhe was having a shower.
 a. While b. When c. since d. a & b

Choose the correct answers

- 1- Ithe manager in the office a few days ago.
 a.have seen b. saw c. would see d. was seen
 2. The manager.....in the office a few days ago.
 a.have seen b. saw c. would see d. was seen
 3 -What games did you to play with your friends?
 a. using b. used c. are used d. use
 4.I the plates. My sister did them.
 a. washed b. was washed c. didn't wash d. wasn't washed
 5. The plates by me. Mum did that.
 a. washed b. were washed c. didn't wash d. weren't washed
 6. The last time she called me five.
 a.at b. in c. was at d. was
 7- I to the museum in 2015.
 a.had gone b. have gone c. went d. go
 8- My mother made me a cake. It of lemons.
 a. was tasting b. tasted c. would taste d. had tasted
 9. It's time we.....our lessons. (ث ع ٢٢٠٢ - دور اول)
 a. study b. will study c. studying d. studied
 10. I wish I.....the meeting yesterday. (ث ع ٢٢٠٢ - دور ثان)
 a. had attended b. have attended c. attend d. attended
 11- At the age of seven, my parents me to Sharm to spend the summer holiday.
 a. are taking b. took c. take d. was taken
 12- At the age of seven, I to Sharm to spend the sunner holiday.
 a. are taking b. took c. take d. was taken
 13.I couldn't open the door as I a shower.
 a) had had b) was having c) had d) has had
 14- Nada the house two hours ago.
 a. cleaned b. cleans c. has cleaned d. was cleaning
 15 you use to play with your friends?
 a. Are b. Were c. Did d. Does
 16 you happy to play with your friends?
 a. Are b. Were c. Did d. Does
 17 -Hea prize for a drawing of an animal.
 a. gave b-was given c- has given d- had given
 18- Ithe vegetables. My mother did them.
 a. bought b. was bought c .didn't buy d. wasn't bought
 19-the vegetables before cooking lunch ?
 a. You washed b. Did you wash c.You were washed d. Were you washed
 20- A : Whatto paint the house ? B : I bought some wonderful paints.
 a. you did b. did you do c. you were done d. were done
 21. Fortunately ,yesterday's newsas bad as we expected.
 a. isn't b. weren't c. wasn't d. didn't
 22- My father alwaysto school when he was young.

- a. walk b. walked c.walks d. was walking
- 23- A : What to improve you skills ? B : I did a course In English.
- a. you did b.did you c. you were done d. was done
- 25- I once used to the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.
- a) reading b) read c) was reading d) had read
- 26- My uncle lived in Aswan three years
- a. for b. since c. ago d. yet
- 27 - Ola used well at school.
- a.study b. to study c. to studying d.studying
- 28- Ola got used well at school.
- a.study b. to study c. to studying d.studying
- 29- Ola studying well at school. She is vey clever
- a. is used to b. used to c. used for d. was used for
- 30- Grass is used animals.
- a. for feeding b. to feeding c. to feed d. a & c
- 31-I..... for five hours every day last week.
- a. have worked b. had worked c. worked d. was working
- 32- When I was on holiday, I alwayson the beach to see the sea.
- a. sit b. sat c. was sitting d. have sat
- 33- Hethe letter and sent it.
- a. had written b. wrote c. writes d. was writing
- 34-He used to be a driver but nowadays he.....
- a. doesn't b. wasn't c. isn't d. didn't
- 35.I a noise while I was studying last night.
- a) hearing b) heard c) was hearing d) heard
- 36.When she saw the fire coming out of the factory, she
- a) was screaming b) had screamed c) screamed d) will scream
- 37- When sheseven, she wrote a poem which won a prize.
- a.is b. was c. was being d. has been
- 38 .Heneed much sleep, but he does now.
- a. didn't use to b. isn't used to c.used to d. uses to
39. At six o'clock yesterday evening, ITV.
- a.was watching b. am watching c. have been watching d. watch
- 40- What when I called you? - You sounded very busy.
- a) did you do b) do you do c) had you done d) were you doing
- 41- While she her homework, my sister was listening to music.
- a) did b) was doing c) is doing d) would do
- 42-Yesterday evening, wefor our English test when all the lights went out.
- a) had revised b) were revising c) revised d) revising
- 43- What at eight o'clock yesterday evening?
- a) were you doing b) did you do c) you were doing d) do you do
- 44-Someone phoned me while I the dinner
- a. cook b. was cooked c. was cooking d. am cooking
- 45-While my car....., I went shopping.
- a.was mending b. was being mended c. had mended d. mended
- 46- This car to me three years ago.
- a) was belonging b) belongs c) has belonged d) belonged
- 47- Whilefootball , he fell down.
- a. played b. he was playing c.was playing d.a&b
- 48-.....I was out shopping, I saw three of my friends
- a) While b) Although c) Because d) On
- 49.While I at home, a man knocked on the door and asked for help.

- a) was being b) had been c) was d) am being
- 50- While Ito school today, I saw an old friend.
a. had walked b. have walked c. was walking d. am walking
- 51- Nesma firsther friend when she was at primary school.
a.met b. was meeting c. had met d.meets
- 53- What..... at 7 pm yesterday?
a you were doing b have you done c were you doing d did you do
54.seeing the accident, the motorists drove more carefully.
a.On b. Without c. Despite d.While
55. While my mother was doing the washing up, I after my baby sister.
a) was looking b) has been looked c) was being looked d) had looked
- 56- While for the school bus, I met one of my old friends.
a being waited b am waiting c was waiting d waiting
- 57- While Samir was very busy doing his homework, his sister to loud music; he wasn't able to concentrate.
a had listened b was listening c is listening d listened

For the distinguished

- 1.Amany phoned me while the dinner
a) was cooking b) cooked c) cooks d) was being cooked
- 2.When I lived in London, I through the park every day.
a) walk b) had walked c) walked d) was walking
- 3- I no longer play tennis as I
a am used b am used to c used to d used
- 4-While finishing one story, he of another one
a) thinks b) is thinking c) was thinking d) has thought
5. I'd rather you..... that car. It is a bargain.
a. buy b. had bought c bought d. to buy
6. I'd rather you..... that car last year. It was a bargain.
a. buy b. had bought c bought d. to buy
7. My father.....home just now.
a. is coming c. came c. was coming d. will come
8. The roomwhen the earthquake happened.
a.was cleaning b. was being cleaned c. would clean d. had cleaned
- 9.The writer his first story when he at university.
a. wrote-is b.wrote- was c. was writing- was d. writes-had been
10. My friendto Italy the other day.
a) was travelling b) travelled c) had travelled d) used to travel
11. While my mother was doing the washing up, my baby sister after.
a) was looking b) has been looked c) was being looked d) had looked
12. Crossing the street , heon the ice and broke his arm.
a) was slipping b) slipped c) had slipped d) was slipped
13. Someone next door..... heavy metal music all night long. I didn't get a wink of sleep.
a. was playing b. has played c. had been played b. has been playing
14. Although the police suspected him, he was able to prove that he.... when the crime was committed.
a. was working b. worked c. had worked d. had been working
- 15.My dadon business trips to China four times last year.
a. was going b.had gone c.went d.used to go
16. During..... to school, I saw some students quarrelling fiercely.
a) my walk b) was walking c) walks d) walking
- 17.The washing machinewhile I the newspaper.
a.delivered-read b. delivers-had read c. was delivered-was reading d. had delivered-is reading
18. Yesterday, we were discussing the new project and.....a good time.

- a. have b.had c.having d.being having
19. Ithe hot weather of the Eastern Desert.
- a. used to b. didn't use to c. wasn't used to d. was used
20. Our school has more equipment than they.....
- a. used to b. used to be c.was used to d.uses
21. No one even noticed when I arrived home. They..... the final match on TV.
- a. have been watching b. had been watching c. were watching d. d. had watched
22.a lot of novels, Naguib Mahfouz became famous as a novelist.
- a. Being written b. Have written c. Written d. Writing
- 23- on holiday, I had a nice time.
- a. While b. During c. As d. Just as
24. Running beside the swimming pool , Ali over and hurt his back.
- a. had fallen b. fell c. fallen d. felt
25. I entered the office and looked around. Most people at their office.
- a) were working b) worked c) had worked d) used to work
26. When I was at work, I forgot my problems with my wife. This means.....
- a. While at home, I forget all my problems.
- b. During work, I forgot all about my problems at home.
- c. At home, I felt worried about my work.
- d. While I was at work, I remembered all my problems.
27. I'd rather I had sold that car. This means.....
- a. I sold it b. I hadn't sold it c. I didn't sell it d. I want to sell it
28. My classmate gave this book to me. This means.....
- a. My classmate was given this book by me.
- b. This book was given my classmate by me.
- c. This book was given to me by my classmate.
- d. This book was given to my classmate by me.
- 29 " If I were you, I would take the job," said my room-mate. This means.....
- a. My room-mate was thinking about taking the job.
- b. My room-mate advised me to take the job.
- c. My room-mate introduced the idea of taking the job to me.
- d. My room-mate insisted on taking the job for me.
30. They made her hand over her passport. This means.....
- a. She was made to hand over her passport. b. She was made hand over her passport.
- c. She was handed over to make her passport. d. She was handed over her passport to make.
31. My brother and I went to that school. This means.....
- a. I went to that school and my brother, too. b. I went to that school and so my brother did.
- c. I went to that school and so did my brother. d. I went to that school and so my brother did, too.
32. My brother used to walk to school with his friends. This means.....
- a. My brother no longer walks to school with his friends.
- b. My brother is accustomed to walking to school with his friends.
- c. My brother hated walking to school with his friends.
- d. My brother doesn't walk to school with his friends no longer.
33. "I used to smoke." This means I
- a. smoke now b. don't smoke now c. no longer smokes d. any longer smoke
34. Nobody told me that Ali was ill ".This means.....
- a. I was told that Ali was ill b. I wasn't told that Ali was ill.
- c. Ali wasn't told to be ill. d. Ali was told not to be ill
- 35- She hurt her finger, ?
- a.did she b.didn't she c. she didn't d.doesn't she
36. While I her, she was always kind to me.
- a.knew b.was knowing c. had known d.know

Rewrite

- 1- He was playing when he fell down . (While)
- 2- When I saw Sami, he was playing tennis. (On)
- 3- During my supper, the telephone rang. (While)
- 4- He was painting the ceiling and he suddenly fell off the ladder. (When)
- 5- On getting up next morning, he discovered that the boat had left. (When)
- 6- While I was staying in England, I picked up some English. (During)
- 7- As I was watching TV, the telephone rang. (When)
- 8- Ali visited us during our lunch. (While)
- 9- He didn't play tennis at all. (never)
- 10- She played the piano when she was a child. (used to)
- 11- She lived in that tall building with her family when she was young. (used)
- 12- I want to be a doctor. (wish)
- 13- I didn't get the job I wanted. (would rather)
- 14- My son isn't a doctor but I hope. (wish)
- 15- I used to swim when I was young. (usually)
- 16- I played football every weekend when I was a boy. (used to)
- 17- He didn't drink coffee, but now he does. (not use)
- 18- Did you live next door to Mr. El Sebaei ? (use to)
- 19- We walked to school when we were young. (used)

~~~~~

## Lesson five

### Skills

### Essay Structure

What is an essay?

ما هو المقال

An essay is a short piece of writing about one topic. It gives your opinion, explains an idea, or tells a story.

المقال هو قطعة كتابة قصيرة عن موضوع واحد. تعطي رأيك، أو تشرح فكرة، أو تحكي قصة

**1-Introduction:** The opening paragraph

مقدمة المقال

1-It is the first paragraph of the essay.

2-Its purpose is to introduce the topic to the reader.

الفقرة الاولى في المقال و الغرض منها تقديم الفكرة للقارئ.

3-Introduces the topic, grabs the reader's attention , and presents the thesis statement (the main idea of the essay).

• **Includes:**

Hook (interesting fact/question/quote), background information, thesis statement.

**2- body paragraph**

(usually 2-3 paragraphs)

• **Purpose:**

Explain and support the thesis with details, examples, and evidence.

• **Includes:**

**Topic sentence** (main idea of the paragraph), supporting details, examples, and a closing sentence linking back to the main topic.

• **Example topic sentence:**

"One way technology improves life is through faster communication."

**3 Conclusion:** The final paragraph

• **Purpose:**

Summarize the main points, restate the thesis in new words, and give a final thought or call to action.

- **Includes:**

Summary of ideas, rephrased thesis, final insight.

- **Example:**

- "In conclusion, technology has made communication faster, work easier, and life more convenient. As it develops, we must use it wisely."

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (SB)**

1. The main purpose of the introduction in an essay is to ....

- a. list references
- b. present the topic and thesis statement
- c. summarize the conclusion
- d. include dialogue

2. The thesis statement is usually found .....

- a At the end of the body
- b In the middle of the essay
- c At the end of the introduction
- c In the conclusion only

3. The function of the conclusion is to .....

- a introduce a new idea
- b repeat the first sentence
- c summarize main points and restate the thesis
- d list all sources

4. What is a topic sentence?

- a. A sentence ending the essay
- b. The first sentence of a body paragraph stating its main idea
- c. A sentence in the conclusion only
- d. A sentence with no purpose

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The first paragraph of an essay is called the ..... .  
(a) conclusion (b) introduction (c) body paragraph (d) title
2. The main purpose of the introduction is to ..... the topic.  
(a) ignore (b) introduce (c) repeat (d) compare
3. A good introduction should ..... the reader's attention.  
(a) waste (b) avoid (c) grab (d) lose
4. The thesis statement tells the ..... idea of the essay.  
(a) hidden (b) last (c) extra (d) main
5. A hook is used to make the reader ..... in the topic.  
(a) interested (b) confused (c) tired (d) careless
6. The body paragraphs mainly ..... the thesis with details and examples.  
(a) forget (b) support (c) change (d) question
7. A paragraph usually begins with a ..... sentence.  
(a) closing (b) topic (c) final (d) summary
8. Supporting details help ..... the main idea of the paragraph.  
(a) explain (b) remove (c) hide (d) shorten
9. Examples are included in the body paragraph to make ideas more ..... .  
(a) difficult (b) confusing (c) convincing (d) unnecessary
10. The closing sentence of a body paragraph should ..... back to the main topic.  
(a) separate (b) move (c) compare (d) link
11. The last paragraph of an essay is called the ..... .  
(a) body paragraph (b) title (c) introduction (d) conclusion
12. In the conclusion, the writer should ..... the main points.  
(a) summarize (b) forget (c) copy (d) replace
13. The thesis statement is often ..... in the conclusion using different words.  
(a) hidden (b) rephrased (c) cancelled (d) ignored
14. A conclusion may end with a final thought or a call to ..... .  
(a) action (b) sleep (c) silence (d) travel
15. An essay is a short piece of writing about ..... topic.  
(a) several (b) no (c) one (d) two

16. Background information in the introduction helps the reader ..... the topic better.  
 (a) understand (b) avoid (c) forget (d) criticize
17. A strong essay should include details, examples, and ..... to support its ideas.  
 (a) evidence (b) jokes (c) pictures (d) questions
18. Which part usually has two or three paragraphs?  
 (a) conclusion (b) title (c) introduction (d) body
19. A well-written conclusion should leave the reader with a final .....  
 (a) mistake (b) question only (c) insight (d) problem

## Skills Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The human body is like a machine that is moving and working all the time. All machines need fuel to give them energy. The fuel for the human body is food, and most of the energy comes from two substances in our food; they are carbohydrates and fats. **They** are found in food like potatoes, bread, rice, wheat, corn, and sugar. Fats come from food like cheese, butter, oil, and meat. Energy in food is measured in calories. For example, an apple has about 40 calories, an egg has about 80, a fresh date has 15, and a tomato has around 12.

Carbohydrates and fats have a lot of calories. For instance, a tin of soft drinks and a spoonful of cooking oil have 120 calories.

You need about 40 calories a day for each kilo that you weigh. So, if you weigh 60 kilos, you need about 2400 calories per day. If a person eats more calories than they need, their body stores the extra calories as fat. A person who gets all the calories they need in their meals but, in addition, drinks only one tin of soft drink a day may gain five kilos per year.

Unfortunately, food which contains carbohydrates is usually cheaper than other food, and it is often convenient and attractive. All 'junk food' contains lots of carbohydrates and fats. If your diet contains a lot of junk food, you will probably get fat.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What is the best title for the passage?  
 a) Carbohydrates and Fats b) Fuel for the Human Body  
 c) Human Body and Machines d) Energy in Food
- According to the passage, what happens if a person eats more calories than they need?  
 a) They lose weight. b) Their body stores the extra calories as fats.  
 c) They become more energetic. d) Their body burns the extra calories.
- How many calories does a person need per day if they weigh 60 kilograms?  
 a) 60 calories. b) 1200 calories. c) 2400 calories. d) 3600 calories.
- Which of the following statements is NOT supported by the passage?  
 a) All junk food contains carbohydrates and fats.  
 b) Carbohydrates and fats are the main sources of energy in food.  
 c) Eating only junk food can lead to weight gain.  
 d) Fats are more harmful than carbohydrates.
- What is the main source of energy for the human body?  
 a) Water. b) Carbohydrates. c) Meat. d) Fiber.
- What happens if a person drinks only one tin of soft drink a day in addition to their meals?  
 a) They lose weight. b) They gain five kilos per year.  
 c) Their body burns extra calories. d) They become more energetic.
- What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?  
 a) Sugar. b) Carbohydrates and fats. c) Cheese and butter. d) Oil and meat.

## Translation

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:

- Time is the most important thing in our life. Therefore, we should spend our spare time in a useful way to succeed in life.

(a) الوقت هو أهم شيء في حياتنا، ولكن يجب علينا قضاء وقت فراغنا بطريقة عادية لكي ننجح في الحياة.  
 (b) الوقت هو أهم شيء في حياتنا، ولذلك يجب علينا قضاء وقت فراغنا بطريقة مفيدة لكي ننجح في الحياة.

- (c) الوقت هو أهم تفكير في حياتنا، ولذلك يجب علينا قضاء وقت فراغنا بطريقة جديدة لكي ننجح في الحياة.  
(d) الوقت هو أهم شيء في حياتنا، ولذلك يجب علينا قضاء وقت عملنا بطريقة مفيدة لكي نستمر في الحياة.

## 2. Tourism has great importance in Egypt. It can help increase the national income.

- (a) للسياحة أهمية كبيرة في مصر فهي تساعد على توفير فرص العمل.  
(b) إن السياحة لها أهمية عظيمة في مصر حيث إنها من الممكن أن تساعد في زيادة الدخل القومي.  
(c) الإلهام له أهمية كبيرة في مصر؛ وذلك لأنه يزيد من مستوى المعيشة.  
(d) إن السياحة لها دور عظيم في مصر؛ لأنها تضاعف من زيادة الدخل القومي.

## 3. Parents should have an effective role in encouraging their children to participate in their country's progress.

- (a) يجب أن يكون للوالدين دور فعال في تشجيع أطفالهم لتشجيع تقدم بلدهم.  
(b) ينبغي على الوالدين أن يكون لهم دور فعال في نصح أطفالهم للمساهمة في تقدم بلدهم.  
(c) يجب أن يكون للوالدين دور فعال في تشجيع أطفالهم للمساهمة في تقدم بلدهم.  
(d) يجب ألا يكون للوالدين دور فعال في تشجيع أطفالهم للمساهمة في إعادة بناء بلدهم

### B) Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:

4. لكي نساعد في حل مشكلة التلوث من الممكن أن نستخدم السيارات التي تعمل بالكهرباء ونزرع المزيد من الأشجار ونستخدم وسائل المواصلات العامة.

- a) In order to help in solving the problem of pollution, we can use solar cars, plant more trees and use public transportation.  
b) In order to help in solve the problem of pollution, we can use electric cars, plant more trees and use general transportation.  
c) In order that help in solving the problem of population, we can use electric cars, plant more trees and use general transportation.  
d) In order to help in solving the problem of pollution, we can use electric cars, plant more trees and use public transportation.

### 5. تعتبر السياحة العمود الفقري للاقتصاد المصري، لذا يجب علينا أن نجذب المزيد من السياح إلى مصر.

- a) Tourism considers the backbone of the Egyptian economy, so we must attract more tourists to Egypt.  
b) Tourism is considered the backbone of the Egyptian economy, so we must attract more tourists to Egypt.  
c) Tourism is considered the backbone of the Egyptian economy, so we must attack more tourists to Egypt.  
d) Tourism considered the backbone of the Egyptian income, so we must attract more tourists to Egypt.  
من المحتمل أن تتحقق في المستقبل سياحة الفضاء والتي ستجذب الكثير من الناس وستحقق أرباحاً خيالية<sup>6</sup>.

- a) It is probably that space tourist will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make huge profits.  
b) It is possible that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract many people and make proper profits.  
c) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will attract lots of people and make huge profits.  
d) It is likely that space tourism will be achieved in the future, which will pull many people and make huge profits.

### (C) Writing

Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following: **Technology**

Technology is everywhere today. We use it at home, at school, and at work. It makes our life easier and faster. In this essay, I will talk about why technology is important and how it helps us.

التكنولوجيا موجودة في كل مكان اليوم. نستخدمها في المنزل، في المدرسة، وفي العمل. إنها تجعل حياتنا أسهل وأسرع. في هذا المقال، سأحدث عن سبب أهمية التكنولوجيا وكيف تساعدنا.

First, technology helps us talk to people. We can use mobile phones and computers to call or send messages. We can also see our family and friends through video calls. This is very useful when we live far from them.

أولاً، التكنولوجيا تساعدنا على التحدث مع الناس. يمكننا استخدام الهواتف المحمولة والحواسيب للاتصال أو إرسال الرسائل. يمكننا أيضاً رؤية عائلتنا وأصدقائنا عبر مكالمات الفيديو. هذا مفيد جداً عندما نعيش بعيداً عنهم.



Second, technology helps us learn new things. We can use the internet to find information. We can watch educational videos and read books online. Students can also do their homework using computers.

ثانياً، التكنولوجيا تساعدنا على تعلم أشياء جديدة. يمكننا استخدام الإنترنت للبحث عن المعلومات. يمكننا مشاهدة فيديوهات تعليمية وقراءة كتب على الإنترنت. الطلاب أيضاً يمكنهم حل واجباتهم المدرسية باستخدام الحواسيب.

Finally, technology helps us do our work quickly. We can send emails instead of letters. We can buy things online without going to shops. We can also use machines to do difficult jobs.

أخيراً، التكنولوجيا تساعدنا على القيام بعملنا بسرعة. يمكننا إرسال رسائل إلكترونية بدلاً من الرسائل الورقية. يمكننا شراء الأشياء عبر الإنترنت دون الذهاب إلى المتاجر. يمكننا أيضاً استخدام الآلات للقيام بالأعمال الصعبة.

In conclusion, technology is very important in our life. It helps us communicate, learn, and work. However, we should not use it too much. We should also spend time with our family and friends in real life.

في الختام، التكنولوجيا مهمة جداً في حياتنا. إنها تساعدنا على التواصل والتعلم والعمل. ولكن، لا يجب أن نستخدمها كثيراً. يجب أيضاً أن نقضي وقتاً مع عائلتنا وأصدقائنا في الحياة الواقعية.

# THE OLD MAN THE SEA

## Main Characters

**1. Santiago** - An old Cuban fisherman, poor and unlucky, but full of dignity, courage, and wisdom. He represents endurance and the struggle of man against nature.

**2. Manolin** - A young boy who loves Santiago and once fished with him. Though forced by his parents to

leave the old man's boat, he remains loyal and supportive, symbolizing friendship and the passing of knowledge between generations.

**3. The Marlin** - A giant, noble fish that Santiago hooks far out in the Gulf Stream. It represents both nature's beauty and its challenge.

**4. The Sharks** - Cruel predators that attack the marlin after Santiago kills it. They symbolize destruction, loss, and the harsh reality of life.

**5. The Sea** - Not just a setting but a living character. Sometimes generous, sometimes cruel, it is the world in which Santiago struggles and finds meaning.

## Themes

### 1. Struggle and Perseverance

- Santiago fights not just the fish but also his own weakness, showing that true victory lies in refusing to give up.

### 2. Pride and Dignity - Even

his honor. Hemingway shows that dignity matters in defeat, Santiago maintains more than material success.

**3. Man and Nature** - The novel explores the relationship between humans and the natural world, portraying both respect and conflict.

**4. Youth and Age** - Through Santiago and Manolin, the story contrasts experience and innocence, showing how strength and knowledge can pass from one generation to another.

**5. Dreams and Symbols** - Santiago's dreams of lions represent youth, hope, and eternal strength, reminding us that even in old age, the human spirit can remain alive.

## CHAPTER one

### The Old Man and His Luck

**Santiago** was an old fisherman, and the sea was his companion. His skin had grown dark and leathery from years beneath the burning sun. His hands were rough, cut, and scarred from

pulling heavy fishing lines day after day. Yet, when people looked into his eyes, they did not see weakness. His eyes were as clear and bright as the sea itself, full of life and determination. For eighty-four long days, Santiago had gone out into the Gulf Stream and returned empty-handed. Not a single fish had been caught. In his small Cuban village, whispers began to spread. The younger fishermen, who still had luck, laughed at him quietly. They called him *salao*—the worst kind of unlucky. Yet Santiago carried himself with dignity. He walked proudly with his fishing gear over his shoulder, his back straight, as if luck were something that could never truly defeat a man.

**Among** all the people of the village, only one remained loyal to him: a boy named Manolin. The boy had fished with Santiago since he was just five years old. Now he was twelve, strong and full of admiration for the old man. He loved Santiago like a grandfather. For forty days, Manolin had fished with him, even when there was no catch. But finally, at his parents' order, he had joined another boat—a luckier boat that brought back fish.

**Still**, every evening, when the other fishermen returned with their catch, Manolin would go to Santiago's small skiff. He would help the old man carry his nets, his gaff, and his harpoon. He would fold the patched sail. He would carry the old man's heavy lines, carefully coiled, and walk beside him.

**"Old man,"** the boy said one evening as they reached Santiago's hut, "you are the greatest fisherman I know. Someday, the luck will return to you."

**Santiago** smiled faintly, the lines of age deepening around his mouth. "It is better to be lucky," he said. "But I would rather be exact. When luck finally comes, I want to be ready for it."

**The boy** nodded. He knew Santiago's words carried wisdom. To fish was not only luck—it was skill, patience, and courage.

**The hut** where Santiago lived was small, made of faded palm leaves. Inside, it was almost bare. On the walls hung only two pictures. There was a bed made of newspapers, a single blanket, a wooden table, and one chair. There were no luxuries, no decorations, no treasures—except the tools of a fisherman.

**Yet** Santiago never complained. He had lived his whole life with the sea, and that was enough.

**That** evening, the boy sat with him outside the hut. They shared a simple meal of black beans, rice, and a little fried fish. The boy had brought it as a gift from his own home. Santiago ate slowly, gratefully, for food was energy, and tomorrow he would need it.

**"Tell** me about baseball," Santiago said suddenly. Baseball was one of the old man's greatest loves. "How are the Yankees playing this season?"

**"The** Yankees are strong," Manolin replied eagerly. "Joe DiMaggio is playing well. He is

always the hero.”

**Santiago's** eyes lit up. “Yes, DiMaggio. He is my champion too. He played even when he had pain in his heel, yet he never gave up. That is real courage. Pain does not matter to a man.” The boy grinned. “But you are stronger than DiMaggio, old man. You have the sea.” The old man laughed, a soft, tired laugh. “Perhaps. But baseball has its battles, and the sea has its own.”

**The** evening grew darker. A warm breeze carried the smell of salt from the sea. The sound of waves reached their ears, steady and calming. Santiago leaned back against the wall of his hut, his face peaceful.

“**Tomorrow** is the eighty-fifth day,” he said. “That is a lucky number. I will go far out, farther than the others dare to go. Maybe too far. But I must find the big fish.”

**The boy** looked at him with admiration. “I wish I could go with you.”

“You have your boat,” Santiago said gently. “But you are always with me in spirit.”

**For a moment**, silence fell between them. Santiago's thoughts drifted back to his youth. He had once been strong, a sailor on great ships. He had traveled to Africa, and on the golden beaches at night he had seen lions—young lions running and playing like children. Those lions had never left his mind. Even now, in his old age, he dreamed of them. They reminded him of strength, youth, and freedom.

“**Do** you know what I dream of, boy?” Santiago asked softly. “Yes,” said Manolin. “You dream of lions.”

The old man smiled. “Yes, lions. Always the lions.”

**When** the meal was finished, Manolin cleared the dishes and promised to bring food again tomorrow. Then he left for his parents' house. Santiago watched him go, feeling both proud and lonely. The boy had strength and future; the old man had only the sea.

**Later**, Santiago lay down on his bed of newspapers. The hut was dark, but the sound of the ocean filled the silence. He thought of the coming day, of the deep waters, of the great fish that waited for him. He thought of Joe DiMaggio, who played through pain, and of the lions, who never feared.

**Slowly**, he closed his eyes. Sleep came to him gently, and with it, the dream of lions. In his dream, they played freely on the beaches of Africa, their golden bodies shining in the sun. Santiago was young again, strong, fearless, full of hope.

**And** as he dreamed, the old man smiled. Tomorrow would be the eighty-fifth day. His luck, he believed, was about to change.

## Critical questions and their answers:

1. How does Hemingway use Santiago's eyes to show his inner spirit?

كيف يستخدم همنغواي عيني سانتياغو لإظهار روحه الداخلية؟

2. His eyes are bright and full of life. They show that he is hopeful and never gives up.

عيناه لامعتان وملينتان بالحياة، وتظهران أنه متفائل ولا يستسلم أبداً

3. Why does the patched sail symbolize more than just an old piece of cloth?

لماذا يرمز الشراع المرقع إلى أكثر من مجرد قطعة قماش قديمة؟

It shows Santiago's hard life, poverty, and determination to keep fishing.

يرمز إلى حياة سانتياغو الصعبة وفقره وإصراره على مواصلة الصيد.

4. In what ways does Santiago represent courage even before the big journey begins?

بأي طرق يمثل سانتياغو الشجاعة حتى قبل أن تبدأ الرحلة الكبيرة؟

He keeps fishing after many failures and never loses hope or dignity.

يواصل الصيد بعد العديد من الإخفاقات ولا يفقد الأمل أو كرامته.

5. What role does baseball play in the old man's life?

ما الدور الذي تلعبه لعبة البيسبول في حياة الرجل العجوز؟

Baseball gives him hope and inspires him to stay strong like Joe DiMaggio.

تمنحه البيسبول الأمل وتلهمه أن يبقى قوياً مثل جو ديماجيو.

6. Why does Hemingway show the boy's loyalty, even when he fishes on another boat?

لماذا يُظهر همنغواي وفاء الصبي حتى عندما يصطاد على قارب آخر؟

To show that true friendship and respect are stronger than luck.

ليُظهر أن الصداقة الحقيقية والاحترام أقوى من الحظ.

7. How do Santiago's dreams reveal his true character?

كيف تكشف أحلام سانتياغو عن شخصيته الحقيقية؟

His dreams of lions show that he is brave, hopeful, and strong inside.

أحلامه بالأسود تُظهر أنه شجاع ومتفائل وقوي من الداخل.

8. Do you think luck or skill is more important for success? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الحظ أم المهارة أكثر أهمية للنجاح؟ ولماذا؟

I think skill is more important because it helps people succeed when luck comes.

أعتقد أن المهارة أهم لأنها تساعد الناس على النجاح عندما يأتي الحظ.

9. How does this chapter introduce the theme of man versus nature?

كيف تقدم هذه الفصل فكرة صراع الإنسان مع الطبيعة؟

Santiago prepares to face the sea with courage, showing that nature is a great challenge.

يستعد سانتياغو لمواجهة البحر بشجاعة، مما يوضح أن الطبيعة تمثل تحدياً كبيراً.

10. In what way does Santiago's hut reflect his personality?

بأي طريقة تعكس كوخ سانتياغو شخصيته؟

It is simple and poor, but clean and honest, just like Santiago himself.

إنه بسيط وفقير، لكنه نظيف وصادق، تماماً مثل سانتياغو نفسه.

11. Why is hope so important for both Santiago and Manolin?

لماذا يُعد الأمل مهماً لكل من سانتياغو ومانولين؟

Hope gives them the strength to believe that better days will come.

يمنحهما الأمل القوة للإيمان بأن الأيام الأفضل ستأتي

12. Why does Santiago refuse to complain about his poor life?

لماذا يرفض سانتياغو الشكوى من حياته الفقيرة؟

He accepts his life with pride and believes hard work is more important than comfort.

يتقبل حياته بفخر ويؤمن بأن العمل الجاد أهم من الراحة.

13. What qualities does Manolin learn from Santiago besides fishing?

ما الصفات التي يتعلمها مانولين من سانتياغو إلى جانب الصيد؟

He learns patience, courage, respect, and never giving up.

يتعلم الصبر والشجاعة والاحترام وعدم الاستسلام.

14. Why does Santiago decide to sail farther than the other fishermen?

لماذا يقرر سانتياغو الإبحار أبعد من بقية الصيادين؟

He believes he will find a big fish if he takes a greater risk.

يؤمن بأنه سيجد سمكة كبيرة إذا خاطر أكثر.

15. What message does Hemingway give through Santiago's life?

ما الرسالة التي يقدمها همنغواي من خلال حياة سانتياغو؟

He shows that true success comes from courage, hope, and perseverance.

يوضح أن النجاح الحقيقي يأتي من الشجاعة والأمل والمثابرة.

16. Why does Santiago admire Joe DiMaggio so much?

لماذا يعجب سانتياغو بجو ديماجيو كثيرًا؟

Because he keeps playing despite pain, showing determination and strength.

لأنه يواصل اللعب رغم الألم.

## Test Unit one

Choose the TWO (2) correct answers from the FIVE (5) options:

1. The company's profits began to ..... last year after losing many of its main customers.

a) increase      b) decline      c) decrease      d) raise      e) maintain

2. The Great Pyramids are an inspiration for architects. The synonyms of "inspiration" are ....

a) encouragement      b) tension      c) discouragement      d) despair      e) enthusiasm

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The ancient temples should be preserved as an important part of the country's .....

a) economy      b) tension      c) heritage      d) knowledge

4. The Silk Road was an important ancient route used for ..... goods like spices and silk.

a) hiding      b) trading      c) storing      d) farming

5. The skilled artist carefully managed to ..... a beautiful statue out of the marble block.

a) carve      b) mold      c) stick      d) paint

6. We will ..... my grandchildren's birthday with a big party tonight.

a) forget      b) influence      c) celebrate      d) encourage

7. After any failure, it's important to learn from mistakes and move ..... to achieve success.

a) up      b) back      c) for      d) forward

8. As a parent, teaching children about ..... for their actions is an essential part of their upbringing.

a) freedom      b) pride      c) responsibility      d) affection

9. .... the meeting, we discussed all the urgent topics.

a) When      b) During      c) While      d) Until

10. When I first met Ali, I ..... he was a good person.

a) thought      b) was thought      c) was thinking      d) have thought

11. .... I was talking on the phone, the lights went out.

a) Since      b) During      c) While      d) After

12. While ..... the old town, we came across a group of Japanese tourists.

a) visited      b) were visiting      c) being visited      d) visiting

13. The first paragraph of an essay is called the .....

(a) conclusion      (b) introduction      (c) body paragraph      (d) title

14. The thesis statement tells the ..... idea of the essay.

(a) hidden      (b) last      (c) extra      (d) main

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the most famous monuments in the world. It was built more than 4,000 years ago during the reign of King Khufu. At that time, it was the tallest building in the



world, and it amazed everyone who saw it.

The pyramid was made of huge limestone blocks; each one was carefully cut and moved. Historians still wonder how the Ancient Egyptians managed to build such a great structure without modern machines.

The pyramid was originally built as a tomb for King Khufu, but it became much more than that. It became a symbol of Egypt's power, intelligence, and determination. It showed that the Egyptians were skilled in engineering, mathematics, and teamwork. Today, the Great Pyramid is the last of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World still standing. Tourists from around the globe come to Egypt to visit it and learn about its history. Some scientists study the pyramid to understand the methods used in construction. Others believe the pyramid still hides secrets inside, waiting to be discovered. The Great Pyramid is not only a building from the past; it is also a lesson for the present and the future. Egyptians today feel proud of their ancestors and continue to protect this monument as part of their national **heritage**. All of those great monuments remind us that hard work and determination can make anything possible.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

15. The passage is mainly about .....

- a) King Khufu's family life
- b) how the Great Pyramid was built and why it is important
- c) how tourists travel in Egypt
- d) the Pyramids of Giza and their value

16. The Great Pyramid was built as .....

- a) a library
- b) a tomb for King Khufu
- c) a palace for tourists
- d) a school for children

17. Which is the best summary of the passage?

- a) The Great Pyramid is an old building that nobody visits today.
- b) The Great Pyramid is a wonder of the world, showing the skills of the Ancient Egyptians.
- c) The Great Pyramid was built quickly and without effort.
- d) The Great Pyramid is only a mystery with no clear history.

18. What does the Great Pyramid show about Ancient Egyptians?

- a) They were skilled in engineering and teamwork.
- b) They were rich and strong.
- c) They only worked for tourists.
- d) They built monuments for money.

19. How is the Great Pyramid different from modern buildings?

- a) It was built with machines, while modern buildings are built with hands.
- b) It is taller than all modern buildings today.
- c) It was built without modern technology, while modern buildings use advanced machines.
- d) There is no difference between them.

20. The writer thinks Egyptians today should feel proud because .....

- a) they discovered gold inside the pyramid
- b) they no longer build monuments
- c) the pyramid is used as a tomb
- d) their ancestors built something that still amazes the world

21. The underlined word "**heritage**" in the passage means .....

- a) something passed down from the past
- b) something we buy in shops
- c) a modern invention
- d) a kind of building material

**22. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c, or d:**

- تشتهر سواحل البحر الأحمر بالشعاب المرجانية فائقة الجمال التي تجذب السياح للاستمتاع برويتها.

- a) The coasts of the Red Sea are famous for their beautiful coral reefs, which attract tourists to enjoy seeing them.
- b) The shores of the Red Sea are famous for their beautiful coral reefs, which attract tourists to enjoy seeing them.
- c) The coasts of the Red Sea are famous for its beautiful coral reefs, which attract tourists to enjoy seeing them.
- d) The coasts of the Red Sea are famous for its beautiful coral reefs, which attracts tourists to enjoy their viewing.

**23. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c, or d:**

- Our need for water in Egypt is expected to increase in the near future, so we must rationalize our use of water, or we will face serious problems.

- a) من المتوقع أن تتضاعف حاجتنا للمياه في مصر في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.
- b) يتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه في مصر في المستقبل البعيد، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

(c) حاجتنا للمياه في مصر من المتوقع أن تزداد في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل جادة.  
(d) من المتوقع أن تزداد حاجتنا للمياه في مصر في المستقبل القريب، لذلك يجب ترشيد استخدامنا للمياه وإلا فإننا سنواجه مشاكل خطيرة.

**Rewrite the following sentences using the words in the brackets**

24. During my holiday, I visited a lot of places. (While)

25- I usually swam a lot when I was young. (used )

**Answer the following questions:**

26. How does Santiago show strength even though he is old and poor?

27. Why is the sea described as Santiago's companion? What does this mean?

**- Write an essay of (120-150) words on the following:**

“A strange day you had in your life”

# Unit two

## Hands Help, Hearts Care

### Key vocabulary

|              |             |                 |                |                      |                       |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| heart        | القلب       | care            | عناية / اهتمام | slip(ped)            | ينزلق / ينزلق         |
| overwhelmed  | مرهق        | mirror the mood | يعكس الحالة    | isolated             | معزول                 |
| irresistible | لا يقاوم    | fade            | يتلاشي - يختفي | light (lit)up        | يضيء                  |
| optimism     | التفاؤل     | community       | مجتمع          | volunteer(voluntary) | يتطوع - متطوع (تطوعي) |
| transform    | يحول - يغير | saplings        | شتلة           | support              | يساند - يشارك         |
| confidence   | الثقة       | serve           | يخدم           | danger               | خطر                   |
| risky        | خطير        | risk            | مجازفة / يجازف | obligation           | اجبار                 |
| emergency    | طواريء      | trust           | يثق            | protect              | يحمي                  |
| rescue       | ينقذ - يخلص | descriptive     | وصفي           | mood                 | مزاج                  |

### Important Vocabulary

|                |                |            |                  |              |                |
|----------------|----------------|------------|------------------|--------------|----------------|
| recycle        | يعيد تصنيع     | teamwork   | العمل الجماعي    | campaign     | حملة           |
| citizen        | قوية           | conflict   | صراع             | corner       | ركن - زاوية    |
| depend on      | يعتمد علي      | dig(dug)   | يحفر             | environment  | البيئة         |
| fill(ed)       | يمليء          | friendly   | ودود             | gentle       | رفيق           |
| grade          | درجة           | growth     | النمو            | habit        | عادة           |
| lifelong       | طوال الحياة    | meaningful | لغة معني         | national     | اهلي - قومي    |
| participate    | يشارك          | personal   | شخصي             | prohibition  | منع            |
| property       | ملكية          | public     | عام              | renew        | يجدد           |
| responsibility | مسئولية        | service    | خدمة             | soft         | ناعم           |
| speak up       | يتحدث بجرأة    | hug(ged)   | يحضن             | kindness     | عطف            |
| knock          | يطرق - طرقة    | laugh      | يضحك             | licence      | رخصة           |
| tap(ped)       | يطرق بخفة      | warm       | دافئ             | wrap(ped)    | يلف - يحيط ب   |
| duty           | واجب           | protect    | يحمي             | truth        | الحقيقة        |
| accident       | حادثة          | act        | يتصرف - سلوك     | aspect       | شكل - جانب     |
| believe in     | يؤمن ب         | breathe    | يتنفس            | crowded      | مزدحم          |
| overall        | اجمالي - عام   | put out    | يطفيء            | rustling     | صوت ورق الشجر  |
| sadly          | بحزن           | save       | ينقذ - يوفر      | scenario     | سيناريو        |
| serious        | خطير           | storm      | عاصفة            | summarize    | يلخص           |
| texture        | نسيج ملمس      | training   | تدريب            | trap(ped) in | يحبس في / يصيد |
| worth          | جدير ب / يستحق | yet        | ومع ذلك          | drown        | يغرق           |
| damp           | رطب            | debate     | مناظرة           | firefighter  | رجل المطافي    |
| fear           | يخاف - خوف     | fire       | نار - يطلق النار | scene        | مشهد / مكان    |
| injured        | مصاب           | ladder     | سلم              | lifeguard    | منقذ           |
| stare at       | يحملق في       | neighbor   | جار              | oven         | فرن            |
| bake           | يخبز           | chat       | يدرّش            | sound        | صوت            |
| worry          | يقلق - قلق     | realize    | يدرك             | ordinary     | عادي           |
| spread         | ينتشر - ينتشر  | advice     | نصيحة            | bitter       | لاذع           |
| encouragement  | تشجيع          | abilities  | قدرات            | common       | عام - شامل     |
| floods         | فيضان          | smoke      | يدخن - دخان      | burning      | محترق          |

## Definitions

|              |                                                                              |               |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| community    | people who live in the same area or have something in common                 | المجتمع       |
| volunteer    | a person who works without pay to help others.                               | يتطوع - متطوع |
| transformed  | completely changed in a positive way.                                        | الوعي         |
| saplings     | young trees                                                                  | شتلات         |
| support      | to give help or encouragement to someone                                     | يؤيد - يساند  |
| confidence   | belief in your own abilities.                                                | الثقة         |
| fade         | to become less bright, clear, or strong.                                     | يتلاشي        |
| irresistible | so attractive or appealing that it is impossible to refuse or avoid.         | لا يقاوم      |
| optimism     | The belief that good things will happen or that the future will be positive. | تفاؤل         |
| overwhelm    | to affect someone so strongly that they can't think or act clearly           | يرهق - يتقل   |
| emergency    | asudden ,dangerous situation.                                                | طواريء        |
| rescue       | to save someone from danger.                                                 | ينقذ          |
| risky        | something dangerous                                                          | خطير          |
| truth        | the real facts about something;what is true and not a lie.                   | الحقيقة       |
| trust        | to believe that someone is good and honest and will not harm you             | يثق           |

### 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. Something . . . . . is so attractive or appealing that it is impossible to refuse.  
a. optimism                      b. irresistible                      c. community                      d. sapling
2. The belief that good things will happen or that the future will be positive is called .....  
a. optimism                      b. volunteer                      c. confidence                      d. transform
3. To ..... is to become less bright, clear, or strong .  
a. transform                      b. fade                      c. support                      d. volunteer
4. To ..... is to give help or encouragement to someone .  
a. overwhelm                      b. support                      c. transform                      d. optimism
5. To ..... is to look at someone or something for a long time without moving your eyes  
a. support                      b. stare                      c. fade                      d. volunteer
6. To ..... means to affect someone so strongly that they cannot think or act clearly.  
a. fade                      b. stare                      c. overwhelm                      d. support
7. To ..... means to change completely the appearance or character of something, usually positively.  
a. transform                      b. fade                      c. overwhelm                      d. community
8. .... means involving the chance of danger or harm.  
a. Truth                      b. Emergency                      c. Rescue                      d. Risky
9. .... is the real facts about something, what is true and not a lie.  
a. Risk                      b. Truth                      c. Rescue                      d. Duty
10. A-An ..... is a large amount of water covering land that is usually dry.  
a. rescue                      b. risk                      c. flood                      d. obligation

## Expressions

|                                            |                          |                               |                        |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>do tasks</b>                            | يؤدي مهام                | <b>follow (obey) rules</b>    | يتبع (يطيع) قواعد      |
| <b>give time (help)</b>                    | يقدم الوقت (المساعدة)    | <b>feel overwhelmed</b>       | يشعر بالارهاق          |
| <b>make a difference</b>                   | يحدث فرقا                | <b>plant saplings</b>         | يزرع شتلات صغيرة       |
| <b>renew the licence</b>                   | يجدد الرخصة              | <b>take (have) a shower</b>   | يستحم                  |
| <b>waste time (water)</b>                  | يضيع وقت (يهدر الماء)    | <b>careful about</b>          | يهتم ب                 |
| <b>look after</b>                          | يهتم ب                   | <b>carry on</b>               | يواصل                  |
| <b>fill .....with</b>                      | يملئ ب                   | <b>give up</b>                | يستسلم - يتخلي عن      |
| <b>involved in</b>                         | متورط في                 | <b>vote in</b>                | ينتخب                  |
| <b>lifelong habit</b>                      | عادة مستديمة             | <b>stay in my mind</b>        | يبقى في الذهن          |
| <b>your heart grows bigger</b>             | تزداد حبا وعطفا          | <b>discuss a topic</b>        | يناقش موضوع            |
| <b>put out fires</b>                       | يطفي نيران               | <b>experience danger</b>      | يجرب الخطر             |
| <b>face a challenge(danger-fears)</b>      | يثبت العزيمة             | <b>give an example</b>        | يعطي مثال              |
| <b>lose lives</b>                          | يفقد ارواح               | <b>make (take) a decision</b> | يتخذ قرار              |
| <b>move furniture</b>                      | يحرك الاثاث              | <b>protect hope</b>           | يحافظ علي الامل        |
| <b>provide reasons</b>                     | يقدم اسباب               | <b>reach safety</b>           | يصل للامان             |
| <b>serve as a ( firefighter-volunteer)</b> | يخدم كرجل مطافي او متطوع | <b>save lives</b>             | ينقذ ارواح             |
| <b>serve the community</b>                 | يخدم المجتمع             | <b>suffer a loss</b>          | يتعرض لفقدان           |
| <b>take (action-risks)</b>                 | يتخذ الاجراء- يجازف      | <b>act in an emergency</b>    | يتصرف في حالة الطواريء |
| <b>be worth every risk</b>                 | يستحق كل المخاطر         | <b>every risk is worth it</b> | كل المخاطر تستحق ذلك   |
| <b>trust our training</b>                  | يستحق التدريب            | <b>no matter the cost</b>     | مهما كلف الامر         |
| <b>protect hope</b>                        | يحمي الامل               | <b>stay with you forever</b>  | يبقى معك للابد         |
| <b>argue for(against)</b>                  | يجادل لصالح              | <b>wait for</b>               | ينتظر                  |
| <b>rescue (save)..... from</b>             | ينقذ من                  | <b>trust in</b>               | يثق                    |

### 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- A driver must ..... traffic rules .  
a. pass                                      b. break                                      c. follow                                      d. disobey
- The time given to you should not be .....  
a. bought                                      b. done                                      c. saved                                      d. wasted
- Sometimes, you can give help by giving .....  
a. tule                                      b. law                                      c. time                                      d. waste
- I need to .....a shower.  
a. do                                      b. take                                      c. give                                      d. swim
- During exam season, many students feel .....by their studies .  
a. followed                                      b. overwhelmed                                      c. planted                                      d. wasted
- When people work together in a team, they should always ..... each other in difficult times  
a. make                                      b. renew                                      c. support                                      d. waste
- Helping the poor can..... a difference in their lives and bring them hope .  
a. plant                                      b. follow                                      c. make                                      d. serve
- You cannot drive legally unless you..... your licence before it expires .  
a. give                                      b. renew                                      c. follow                                      d. waste
- In our village, young people..... saplings in order to protect the environment.  
a. plant                                      b. waste                                      c. renew                                      d. give
- The volunteers decided to..... help by cleaning the public park together.  
a. obey                                      b. make                                      c. give                                      d. take

## Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

| Words    | Meaning | Synonyms               | Antonyms                | Meaning |
|----------|---------|------------------------|-------------------------|---------|
| optimism | تفاؤل   | pessimism- hopefulness | pessimism- hopelessness | تشاؤم   |



|              |              |                         |                           |              |
|--------------|--------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| care         | رعاية        | look after- protect     | neglect- ignore           | يهمل         |
| fade         | يتلاشي       | disappear-vanish        | appear- brighten          | يظهر         |
| irresistible | لا يقاوم     | attractive- appealing   | unattractive- unappealing | غير جذاب     |
| isolated     | منعزل        | separated- disconnected | connected- united         | متصل         |
| light up     | يضيئ         | brighten- shine         | darken- dim               | يعتم         |
| overwhelm    | يرهق         | overpower- overload     | calm- comfort             | يستريح       |
| recycle      | يعيد استخدام | reuse- recover          | waste- dump               | يهدر         |
| mirror       | يعكس         | reflect- show           | hide- conceal             | يخفي         |
| support      | يدعم         | assist- aid             | discourage- resist        | يقاوم / يثبط |
| transform    | يحول         | change- convert         | preserve- maintain        | يحفظ/ يبقي   |
| obligation   | انجاز        | duty - responsibility   | freedom- option           | فشل - هزيمة  |
| flood        | اعجاب        | overflow- inundation    | dryness - drought         | احتقار       |
| rescue       | يعجب         | save - free             | endanger - harm           | يكره- ينتقد  |
| emergency    | تقدم         | crisis- urgency         | safety - calmness         | تراجع- تدهور |

## 1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- "Despite losing the first round, the team showed great optimism. "Optimism" is a synonym of .....  
a. gloom                      b. hopefulness                      c. despair                      d. cheerfulness                      e. hopelessness
- "During the debate, her expressions seemed to mirror her mood." This is antonymous with .....  
a. hide her feelings                      b. reflect her feelings                      c. show her mood                      d. conceal her mood                      e. display her state
- "He asked us to care for the plants." "Care" is a synonym of .....  
a. look after                      b. neglect                      c. protect                      d. ignore                      e. overlook
- "The chocolate cake was so irresistible that Omar had two pieces." "Irresistible" synonymous with .....  
a. resistible                      b. fascinating                      c. avoidable                      d. attractive                      e. undesirable
- "The colors on the old sign began to fade after years in the sun." "Fade" is an antonym of .....  
a. brighten                      b. appear                      c. vanish                      d. disappear                      e. weaken

## Language Notes

1- **degree**                      **grade** - درجة علمية أو حرارة                      درجة في امتحان أو اختبار

- She has a **degree** in Engineering.
- I got a **good grade** in English.

2- **neighbour (n.)** جار                      **neighboring(adj.)** - مجاور                      **neighborly (adj.)** ودود

1. My **neighbour** always waters our plants when we travel.
2. Egypt has good relations with its **neighboring** countries.
3. Everyone appreciated his **neighborly** attitude when he helped the elderly woman.

3- **late (adj.-adv.)** متأخر / **lately (adv.)** مؤخرا                      **latter** التالي / **later** فيما بعد

- 1- We arrived **late** because the road was crowded.
- 2- I haven't seen Omar **lately** because he has been very busy.
- 3- We will discuss the problem **later** after everyone arrives.
- 4- Between English and French, I prefer **the latter** subject.

1. Students should always **respect** their teachers.
2. Dr. Samy is a highly **respected** scientist whose work is known worldwide.
3. Everyone knows **Mr. El Sebaei** as a **respectable** man who is honest and kind.
4. The children were quiet and **respectful** during the school assembly.

5- by من أكثر حروف الجر استخداماً في اللغة الإنجليزية، وله معانٍ واستخدامات عديدة. فيما يلي أهمها

|                       |                                                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. بالقرب من          | The school is <b>by the river</b> .             |
| 2. بواسطة             | The book was written <b>by Naguib Mahfouz</b> . |
| 3. عن طريق / باستخدام | We travelled <b>by train</b> .                  |
| 4. قبل (موعد نهائي)   | Finish your homework <b>by 8 p.m.</b>           |
| 5. بمقدار             | Prices increased <b>by 10%</b> .                |
| 6. مروراً بـ بجانب    | We walked <b>by the museum</b> .                |
| 7. واحداً تلو الآخر   | We entered the hall one <b>by one</b> .         |
| 8. حسب / وفقاً لـ     | <b>By my watch</b> , it's six o'clock.          |
| 9. عن غير قصد         | I learned English <b>by watching movies</b> .   |
| 10. في القسم الخاص بـ | a novel <b>by Charles Dickens</b>               |

| 6-Phrasal Verb | المعنى                    | مثال                              |
|----------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| put out        | يطفئ / ينشر               | put <b>out</b> a fire             |
| put off        | يؤجل / يثبط               | put <b>off</b> the meeting        |
| put on         | يرتدي / يشغل / يقدم عرضاً | put <b>on</b> a jacket            |
| put on weight  | يزداد وزنه                | put <b>on</b> weight              |
| put at         | يقدر بـ                   | The cost was put <b>at</b> \$500. |

- 7- معزول (ضد الحرارة أو الكهرباء أو الصوت) - **insulated**. معزول / منفصل عن الآخرين **isolated**
- The village is **isolated** from the nearest town because of the floods.
  - Some elderly people feel **isolated** after retirement.
  - Electric wires are covered with **insulated** plastic.
  - This house is well **insulated**, so it stays warm in winter.

Choose the correct answers:

1. Our ..... invited us to dinner after we moved into the new house.  
(a) neighbour (b) neighboring (c) neighborly (d) neighborhood
2. The school serves students from the ..... villages.  
(a) neighborly (b) neighbourhood (c) neighboring (d) neighbour
3. It was very ..... of Ali to help his next-door family during the storm.  
(a) neighbour (b) neighboring (c) neighborly (d) neighborhood
4. Sara got an excellent ..... in her final English exam.  
(a) degree (b) grade (c) level (d) certificate
5. My sister has a university ..... in Pharmacy.  
(a) mark (b) grade (c) degree (d) class
6. I was happy because my math ..... was much higher this term.  
(a) diploma (b) grade (c) degree (d) subject
7. He earned a bachelor's ..... after four years of study.  
(a) grade (b) mark (c) score (d) degree
8. Have you spoken to your uncle .....?  
(a) late (b) lately (c) latter (d) later
9. We can continue this conversation ..... if you are busy now.  
(a) lately (b) late (c) later (d) latter

10. Don't stay up too ..... before an important exam.  
(a) latter (b) later (c) late (d) lately
11. Of the two suggestions, the ..... seems more practical.  
(a) later (b) late (c) lately (d) latter
12. Good friends always show ..... for each other's opinions.  
(a) respect (b) respectable (c) respected (d) respectful
13. Our principal is widely ..... for his wisdom and experience.  
(a) respect (b) respectful (c) respectable (d) respected
14. She comes from a ..... family with a good reputation.  
(a) respected (b) respectful (c) respectable (d) respect
15. We should be ..... to elderly people.  
(a) respectable (b) respect (c) respected (d) respectful

## Reading

It was a difficult week for Sama. Her *grades* were *slipping*, and she felt *overwhelmed* by all her schoolwork. On Thursday afternoon, she sat by her window, *staring* at the grey sky that seemed to *mirror* her *mood*. She hadn't spoken to many people lately and felt *isolated* from her friends.

Then, there was a knock at the door. It was Mrs. Aya, the friendly neighbor who lived upstairs. She held a small basket covered with a clean white cloth, still warm from the oven.

"I baked some fresh bread this morning," Mrs. Aya said warmly. "I thought you might like some."

The smell was *irresistible*, *wrapping* around Sama like a gentle *hug*. Sama smiled for the first time in days and invited her in for tea. They sat together, chatting about small things, school, plants, and Mrs. Aya's garden, while the soft sound of rain *tapped* on the window.

Slowly, Sama felt her worries began to *fade*. Before leaving, Mrs. Aya said, "Sometimes, the smallest kindness can make a big difference."

Sama kept thinking about those words. She decided to help her younger cousin with homework that evening. Seeing her cousin's face *light up* filled her with *optimism*.

She realized that kindness doesn't just make others feel better; it can change your own heart, too.

## Listening

My name is Ahmed, and I'm 17 years old. Last year, I joined a community tree planting project in my village. At first, I only wanted to get volunteering hours for school, but what happened during the project truly transformed me. We worked in teams to dig holes, plant saplings, and water them. It was hard work under the hot sun, but we laughed a lot and supported each other.

That's when I learned the meaning of real teamwork, not just working together, but caring if someone was tired or needed water. One day, an old farmer came to watch. He said, "I haven't seen green like this in 20 years. His words stayed in my mind. I realized we weren't just planting trees, we were making a difference to the environment and to people's lives."

## Lesson 3-4-5

## Listening

Voluntary work is an important part of building stronger communities and better societies. Unlike *paid employment*, voluntary work is done *freely*, without *expecting financial rewards*. People of all ages can *participate* from young students to *retired professionals* and their *contributions* make a *visible* difference in the lives of others.

One of the main values of voluntary work is that it teaches *responsibility*. When a person gives time to help others, they learn that their actions *matter*. For example, students who *volunteer* in hospitals or schools develop *empathy* and *patience*. They realize that even simple

tasks, like reading stories to children or **assisting** elderly patients, bring **joy** and **comfort**. Everyone has to remember that helping others is essential.

Voluntary work also **strengthens** social connections. People from different backgrounds meet. They must cooperate and share experiences. This cooperation builds understanding and respect across cultures. Moreover, volunteering often gives individuals **practical skills** such as **teamwork**, **problem-solving** and **leadership** which later help them in professional life.

Finally, voluntary work is a source of personal **satisfaction** so we all should participate in it. Knowing that one's **efforts** have supported others creates **pride** and **motivation**. It proves that true **wealth** is not only **measured in** money, but also in kindness and service.

## Reading

My name is Radwan, and I work as a firefighter in Alexandria. Many people think our job is just putting out fires, but it's much more than that. We rescue people from car accidents, help during floods, and sometimes save animals trapped in dangerous places. The truth is, our work can be risky. I have entered burning buildings where smoke made it hard to see and breathe. I've stood on shaking ladders in the middle of the night, with the heat almost burning my skin. Sadly, I have also seen lives lost before we could reach them. These moments stay with me forever.

Yet, we do it because we believe in obligation – the duty to help each other, no matter the cost. In every emergency, we must act quickly, stay calm, and trust our training. We don't think about fear in those moments; we think about the people waiting for us.

I am proud to serve my community. I know that my work saves lives, and that is worth every risk. When you help others, you are not just doing a job – you are protecting hope itself.

### 1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- "The small island was completely isolated from the mainland." "**Isolated**" means.....  
a. separated      b. connected      c. removed      d. united      e. integrated
- "The streetlights began to light up as the sky grew darker." "**Light up**" can be replaced by.....  
a. darken      b. brighten      c. illuminate      d. dim      e. shadow
- "They refused to support the new law." "**Support**" is an antonym of .....  
a. oppose      b. encourage      c. push      d. aid      e. hinder
- The road was closed because of a "flood," the word "**flood**" is a synonym of .....  
a. overflow      b. dry      c. inundation      d. drought      e. shortage
- It is risky business so we should be careful'. "**Risky**" is an antonym of .....  
a. dangerous      b. hazardous      c. safe      d. protected      e. unsafe
- A sudden fire in the building created an "emergency." "**Emergency**" is a synonym of .....  
a. option      b. crisis      c. calm      d. routine      e. urgent situation
- He decided to "risk" his life to save the young boy. "**Risk**" can be replaced by.....  
a. protect      b. endanger      c. secure      d. hazard      e. certainty
- Paying taxes is a legal obligation. The opposites of "**obligation**" are.....  
a. duty      b. freedom      c. commitment      d. option      e. responsibility
- Going near huge fire is risky. The opposites of "**risky**" are .....  
a. hazardous      b. safe      c. dangerous      d. secure      e. unsafe
- The police rescued the baby from the fire. "**Rescue**" can be replaced by .....  
a. abandon      b. save      c. harm      d. free      e. leave

## Exercises

### 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- Sama felt ..... by her schoolwork and falling grades.  
a. respected      b. human      c. active      d. overwhelmed
- Spending so much time alone made her feel .....  
a. talkative      b. isolated      c. participated      d. irresistible
- The smell of the bread was so ..... that she smiled immediately.  
a. irresistible      b. tasteful      c. cooked      d. compared

4. Her worries began to ..... as she talked with Mrs. Aya.  
a. fate                                      b. fade                                      c. appear                                      d. slip
5. Helping her cousin filled her with a sense of ..... about the future.  
a. overwhelming                                      b. violence                                      c. pessimism                                      d. optimism
6. A ..... is a group of people living in the same place or having a shared interest.  
a. community                                      b. sapling                                      c. optimism                                      d. confidence
7. Sama wasn't happy to see her grades .....  
a. feel                                      b. slip                                      c. step                                      d. fill
8. After the project, Ahmed felt completely .....  
a) tired                                      b) transformed                                      c) careful                                      d) nervous
9. The ..... helped clean the park without asking for money.  
a) visitor                                      b) worker                                      c) tourist                                      d) volunteer
10. Planting more ..... will help the village have more shade in the future.  
a) flowers                                      b) vegetables                                      c) saplings                                      d) rocks
11. My ..... has grown since I started giving speeches in class.  
a) success                                      b) talent                                      c) experience                                      d) confidence
12. Good friends always ..... each other in difficult times.  
a) ignore                                      b) support                                      c) blame                                      d) leave
13. The whole ..... joined the campaign to save water.  
a) community                                      b) company                                      c) family                                      d) classroom
14. .... can help you meet new people and team new skills .  
a. Kindness                                      b. Prohibition                                      c. Property                                      d. volunteering
15. After moving to a new city, Omar felt lonely and.....  
a. gentle                                      b. isolated                                      c. lifelong                                      d. friendly
16. Ahmed was in a good..... all morning after getting the good news .  
a. mood                                      b. comer                                      c. habit                                      d. grade
17. Amira thinks helping others can fill you with hope and .  
a. responsibility                                      b. property                                      c. optimism                                      d. population
18. Being good friends, Nada and Yumna always..... for each other in difficult times  
a. care                                      b. slip                                      c. hug                                      d. knock
19. Building the community garden was a true example of.....  
a. kindness                                      b. comer                                      c. optimism                                      d. teamwork
20. A feeling of trust in your own abilities, qualities, or judgment is known as.....  
a. isolated                                      b. fade                                      c. confidence                                      d. overwhelm
21. Little Eman couldn't stop..... at the beautiful painting in the gallery.  
a. wrapping                                      b. knockdng                                      c. staring                                      d. digging
22. Many people in our ..... joined the clean-up event last Friday.  
a. mood                                      b. community                                      c. environment                                      d. growth
23. Farmers grow lemon..... in their fields.  
a. ovens                                      b. licences                                      c. saplings                                      d. planets
24. Mr El Sebaei always tries to ..... us when we need help.  
a. support                                      b. slip                                      c. fade                                      d. dig
25. A/An..... is a young tree, especially one that is newly planted.  
a. community                                      b. sapling                                      c. optimism                                      d. transform
26. Nada didn't want her grades to..... this term.  
a. warm                                      b. slip                                      c. fade                                      d. hug
27. Seeing her old friend's smile seemed to..... her up whole day.  
a. slip                                      b. hug                                      c. tap                                      d. light
28. Speaking in front of a big audience gave Nada a lot of.....  
a. kindness                                      b. growth                                      c. confidence                                      d. habit
29. Spending too much time alone can..... a person from their friends .  
a. fill                                      b. wrap                                      c. isolate                                      d. support
30. The calm lake seemed to..... the clouds in the sky perfectly.  
a. dig                                      b. wrap                                      c. mirror                                      d. knock
31. Good ..... should follow the laws to be safe.  
a. citizens                                      b. bakers                                      c. thieves                                      d. robbers
32. Even the smallest act of ..... can change someone's whole day.  
a. violence                                      b. responsibility                                      c. kindness                                      d. isolation
33. Ahmed was upset after getting a low ..... on his test.



- a. grade                                      b. mood                                      c. optimism                                      d. degree
34. Being .....means to be separated from others, either physically or socially.
- a. fade                                      b. sapling                                      c. isolated                                      d. support
35. It's your .....to take care of your belongings.
- a. responsibility                                      b. mood                                      c. habit                                      d. optimism
36. Many birds and animals..... on trees for food and shelter.
- a. bake                                      b. slip                                      c. depend                                      d. knock
37. Many students will..... in the school debate next week.
- a. hug                                      b. recycle                                      ca. fade                                      d. participate
38. Mr El Sebaei is always..... and ready to help everyone.
- a. friendly                                      b. public                                      c. warm                                      d. soft
39. Mrs Ahlam gave the baby a..... hug to calm him down.
- a. soft                                      b. warm                                      c. gentle                                      d.fresh
40. Reading is a..... habit that benefits you for years.
- a. fresh                                      b. lifelong                                      c. soft                                      d.public
41. Reading is a good way to encourage the..... of the mind.
- a. property                                      b. prohibition                                      c. conflict                                      d. mood
42. Sama's help caused her cousin's face to .....up
- a. light                                      b. fade                                      c.fly                                      d. disappear
43. Hard work and good education can completely .....a person's future .
- a. wrap                                      b. transform                                      c. fade                                      d. slip
44. Plastic and paper should be..... to protect the planet.
- a. recycled                                      b. baked                                      c. knocked                                      d. warmed
45. Ifyou believe something is wrong, you should .....about it
- a. fill                                      b. wrap                                      c. hug                                      d. speak up

## Lesson three and four

1. A sudden sound was heard, everyone knew it was a/an.....
- a. emergency                                      b. rescue                                      c. storm                                      d. hope
2. After the..... ,everyone was safe, but the cars were damaged.
- a. service                                      b. accident                                      c. obligation                                      d.obligation
3. Heavy rain last night caused the river to.....the streets.
- a. float                                      b. flood                                      c. drown                                      d. sink
4. In some jobs, you must..... your own safety to help others .
- a. crowd                                      b. risk                                      c.resuce                                      d. burn
5. It can be..... to swim in the sea during a storm.
- a. sadly                                      b. risky                                      c. quickly                                      d. rainy
- 6.The school project helped build my ..... before the final presentation.
- a) obligation                                      b) confidence                                      c) mood                                      d) danger
- 7.Doctors and nurses ..... patients day and night.
- a) trust                                      b) rescue                                      c) serve                                      d) protect
- 8.It is ..... to drive too fast on wet roads.
- a) descriptive                                      b) emergency                                      c) confidence                                      d) risky
- 9.Climbing the mountain without safety equipment is a great ..... .
- a) trust                                      b) risk                                      c) rescue                                      d) mood
- 10.Wearing a seat belt is an ..... for all passengers.
- a) confidence                                      b) danger                                      c) obligation                                      d) descriptive
- 11.The ambulance arrived quickly because it was an ..... .
- a) protect                                      b) serve                                      c) confidence                                      d) emergency
- 12.I ..... my best friend because he always tells the truth.
- a) rescue                                      b) trust                                      c) risk                                      d) serve
- 13.Parents should ..... their children from online dangers.
- a) confidence                                      b) emergency                                      c) protect                                      d) descriptive
- 14.Firefighters managed to ..... the family from the burning house.
- a) serve                                      b) trust                                      c) mood                                      d) rescue

15. The report gives a ..... explanation of the new teaching method.  
a) confidence                      b) descriptive                      c) emergency                      d) risk
16. The music changed my ..... and made me feel happier.  
a) protect                      b) obligation                      c) mood                      d) serve
17. Walking alone in that dark area may put you in .....  
a) danger                      b) trust                      c) descriptive                      d) confidence
18. We..... a loss after our house had fallen down.  
a. gained                      b. suffered                      c. missed                      d. saved
19. We .....the topic of climate change with a professor from Cairo university.  
a. made                      b. did                      c. took                      d. discussed
20. A good leader is that one who can.....good quick decisions.  
a. make                      b. do                      c. stay                      d. suffer
21. It is our ..... to help elderly people when they need assistance.  
a) accident                      b) duty                      c) debate                      d) texture
22. Sunscreen helps ..... your skin from harmful UV rays.  
a) summarize                      b) drown                      c) protect                      d) chat
23. Always tell the ..... even if it is difficult.  
a) storm                      b) scene                      c) worry                      d) truth
24. The truth is, our work can be risky." Risky" is closest in meaning to:.....  
a) safe                      b) dangerous                      c) easy                      d) simple
25. My ..... at home includes washing the dishes and cleaning the floor.  
a) duty                      b) beauty                      c) risk                      d) emergency
26. Two cars were damaged in a road ..... yesterday.  
a) accident                      b) aspect                      c) oven                      d) training
27. We should ..... quickly in emergency situations.  
a) believe                      b) act                      c) stare                      d) save
28. One important ..... of the project is teamwork.  
a) firefighter                      b) ordinary                      c) aspect                      d) damp
29. Many young people ..... in the importance of hard work.  
a) believe                      b) trap                      c) rustle                      d) bake
30. Plants need sunlight to ..... and grow well.  
a) protect                      b) breathe                      c) worry                      d) put out
31. The streets become ..... during the holiday season.  
a) serious                      b) damp                      c) crowded                      d) worth
32. My neighbor had a medical ..... last night, so I drove her to the hospital."  
a) truth                      b) flood                      c) obligation                      d) emergency
33. The report gives an ..... view of the company's performance.  
a) rustling                      b) overall                      c) scene                      d) duty
34. She smiled ..... after hearing the bad news.  
a) slowly                      b) happily                      c) sadly                      d) respectfully
35. Wearing a life jacket can ..... your life.  
a) debate                      b) save                      c) summarize                      d) fire
36. The doctor said his condition was very .....  
a) texture                      b) chat                      c) serious                      d) ordinary
37. A strong ..... caused heavy rain and high winds.  
a) truth                      b) ladder                      c) storm                      d) oven
38. Something that you have to do because it is your duty is a/ an.....  
a. prohibition                      b. obligation                      c. trust                      d. risk
39. A/A.....is the possibility of something bad happening  
a. flood                      b. truth                      c. trust                      d. risk
40. At the end of the lesson, the teacher asked us to ..... the story.  
a) summarize                      b) protect                      c) stare                      d) drown
41. Silk has a soft ..... that many people like.  
a) debate                      b) texture                      c) scene                      d) sound

42. New employees receive special ..... before starting work.  
 a) worry                      b) damp                      c) firefighter                      d) training
43. The climbers were ..... in the cave after the rocks fell.  
 a) believe                      b) trapped                      c) chatted                      d) realized
44. This book is ..... reading more than once.  
 a) worth                      b) crowded                      c) serious                      d) ladder
45. The child nearly ..... because he couldn't swim.  
 a) save                      b) drowned                      c) baked                      d) chatted
46. The clothes were still ..... after the rain.  
 a) firefighter                      b) damp                      c) ordinary                      d) worth
47. Students took part in a ..... about climate change.  
 a) fire                      b) debate                      c) neighbor                      d) scene
48. The ..... rescued the family from the burning house.  
 a) lifeguard                      b) firefighter                      c) neighbor                      d) baker
49. Many people ..... spiders although they are harmless.  
 a) realize                      b) bake                      c) fear                      d) summarize
50. The campers lit a ..... to keep warm at night.  
 a) training                      b) sound                      c) fire                      d) truth

## ***Grammar***

### *MODAL VERBS OF NECESSITY, PROHIBITION AND LACK OF NECESSITY*

الأفعال المساعدة الدالة على الضرورة و التحريم و غياب الضرورة

**1- Have to / Has to = It is necessary to do..... ( We have no other choice) مضطـر أن**

- تستخدم للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا وليس أماننا اختيار بسبب القواعد والقوانين أو الظروف

- If she wants to start her course this year, she **has to apply** before the end of March.
- We **have to wear** helmets if we are going to take the motorcycle. (The law says so.)
- You **have to show** your passport when **you leave the country**.

- كما تستخدم في الأوامر:

- You **have to apologize** to Mona. You don't want to lose her as a friend. (**advice**)
- You can't go out. You **have to clean** your room first. (**an order**)

- يمكن استخدام **have to** في الأزمنة المختلفة (ما عدا الأزمنة المستمرة)

- I **had to work** six days a week. = **-It was necessary for me to work** six days a week.
- My flight is at six in the morning. **I'll have to get up early**.
- **Have you ever had to go** to hospital?

- تستخدم (do / does) مع (Have to / Has to) في السؤال و النفي

- **Do you have to put on** a uniform at school?
- She **doesn't have to buy** a new dictionary for school?

- يمكن أن نستخدم (have got to / has got to) بدلا من (have to / has to)

- I **have got to go** to work on time.
- She is late for the meeting, she **has got to take** a taxi.

- نستخدم (have got to / has got to) في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد

- **Have you got to be** at the office every day?
- **Has that man got to** carry all the boxes by himself?

## 2- must + infinitive: = it is necessary to .....

يجب أن

يستخدم للتعبير عن (الزام داخلي) أي إحساس قوي بضرورة عمل شيء من وجهة نظر المتكلم أو للتعبير عن أن شيء مهم بالنسبة لنا وفي هذه الحالة تستخدم فقط مع الضمائر **I / We** ومع **You** في حالة السؤال:

- I **must visit** my grandparents more often. (**It's important to me that I do.**)
- Must you wear that yellow tie?  
(Is it important to you that you do it? This also suggests that it bothers me.)

يستخدم للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية

- You **mustn't be** late or dad will be angry. (strong advice)
- You **must wash** your hands before you eat. (strong advice)

وفي الأوامر كما تستخدم في القوانين والقواعد وعندما نذكر أنفسنا بضرورة عمل شيء:

- You **must clean** your room before you go out with your friends. (an **order**)
- Drivers and passengers of motorcycles **must wear helmets**. (a **law**)

يستخدم في حالة توجيه دعوة أو التعبير عن مشاعر صادقة:

- You **must come** and see us at the weekend. - You **must try** a piece of my cake.

يستخدم في الاستنتاج أو التعبير عن نتيجة منطقية: ( سيتم شرحه بالتفصيل )

- Dad **must have left** already. I don't see his car.

يلاحظ استخدام للتعبير عن الضرورة في المضارع والمستقبل فقط :

- I **must go** now. • I **must see** my doctor tomorrow.

## need / needs to + infinitive:

يستخدم للتعبير عن أشياء ضرورية في الحاضر أو المستقبل

- He **needs to be busy** all the time or his boss will be angry.
- We **need to revise** for next week's exam.

يستخدم **Must** في السؤال بدون فعل مساعد وتأتي في بداية السؤال:

- **Must he send** the e-mail now?

## 3- Had to : It was necessary to do.....

اضطر أن

- تستخدم (**Had to**) للتعبير عن إلزام و ضرورة في الماضي

- We **had to do** a test at school today. - We **had to take** a taxi as it **was raining** heavily.

## 4- mustn't : It is necessary NOT to do.....

يجب ألا

### mustn't + infinitive:

يستخدم للتعبير عن أن شيء ممنوع أو غير مسموح به أو تترتب عليه نتيجة سيئة إذا قمنا به:

- = You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals. = You **aren't allowed to smoke** in hospitals.
- = You **aren't permitted to smoke** in hospitals.
- = You **are forbidden to smoke** in hospitals.
- = You **are banned from smoking** in hospitals.
- = You **are prohibited from smoking** in hospitals.
- = You **aren't permitted to smoke** in hospitals. = you **are forbidden to smoke** in hospitals.

(Mustn't = (be) not allowed = (be) not permitted to = (be) banned = (be) prohibited = (be) forbidden to)

- ويمكن أن تبدأ الجمل بالشيء الغير مسموح به

- Smoking **is not allowed** in hospitals. - Parking **is forbidden** here.

## 5- don't have to / don't need to / needn't + infinitive: doesn't have to / doesn't need to = It is NOT necessary to do..

لا داعي أن - غير مضطر

يستخدم التعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع أو المستقبل

- She isn't late for school so she **doesn't have to / needn't hurry**.
- When you are on holiday, you **needn't go to bed** early.
- She **doesn't have to work** on Saturday.

## 6- Didn't have to = didn't need to = It wasn't necessary to., so we didn't

لم نضطر أن - تستخدم هذه الأفعال للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث لَمْ يَتِمَّ في الماضي لأنه لم يكن ضروريا)

- We **didn't have to go to school yesterday**. It was a holiday.
- I **didn't have to do** the shopping **yesterday**. My brother **did it**.

## 7- needn't have + PP. : It wasn't necessary to....., but we did

- يستخدم هذا الفعل للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي (حدث تَمَّ في الماضي على الرغم من كونه لم يكن ضروريا)

- You **needn't have brought** your umbrella. It's not going to rain.

- لاحظ الفارق في المعنى في الجمل الآتية

- I **didn't have to buy** more bread. We **already have a lot**.  
(I **didn't buy** bread because we have some.)
- I **needn't have bought** more bread. We already have a lot.  
(I **bought** bread, but it was not necessary because we have some.)

في حالة التعبير عن الضرورة في المستقبل نستخدم **must / have to / will have to**

- I **have to get up** early tomorrow.
- I'll **have to send** the fax tomorrow.

- لاحظ الفرق بين استخدام **need to** كفعل ناقص واستخدام **need** كفعل عادي بمعنى يحتاج أو يتطلب

- This job **needs computer skills**. - I **need to finish** the job early. = I **must finish** it early.

## Should – should n't

يجب للنصيحة

You **should wash** your hands before eating  
You **should choose** football to practice. You may be famous  
Food **should be washed** well before cooking it

نستخدمها لطلب النصيحة  
نستخدمها لتقديم الاقتراح.  
نستخدمها في المجهول كالتالي

**النصيحة في المضارع**

- |                                                                                                                                                           |                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ينبغي أن} \\ \text{should + (المصدر)} \\ \text{ought to + (المصدر)} \\ \text{had better + (المصدر)} \end{array} \right\}$ | = I advise you to + (المصدر)                   |
|                                                                                                                                                           | = If I were you, I would + (المصدر)            |
|                                                                                                                                                           | = It is advisable + for +(شخص) + to + (المصدر) |
|                                                                                                                                                           | = It is desirable + for +(شخص) + to + (المصدر) |
|                                                                                                                                                           | = It would be a good idea to + (المصدر)        |
|                                                                                                                                                           | = You would rather + (المصدر)                  |
|                                                                                                                                                           | = It is a good thing to + (المصدر)             |

-You **should take** a rest. = You **ought to take** a rest. = You **had better take** a rest.

⇒ It is advisable for you to take a rest.

- |                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{لا ينبغي أن} \\ \text{shouldn't + (المصدر)} \\ \text{had better not + (المصدر)} \\ \text{oughtn't to + (المصدر)} \end{array} \right\}$ | = I advise you not to + (المصدر)                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                        | = It is inadvisable + for +(شخص) + to + (المصدر) |
|                                                                                                                                                                        | = It is undesirable + for +(شخص) + to + (المصدر) |
|                                                                                                                                                                        | = If I were you, I wouldn't + (المصدر)           |
|                                                                                                                                                                        | = It would not be a good idea to + (المصدر)      |
|                                                                                                                                                                        | = You would rather not + (المصدر)                |



## اللوم فى الماضى ( النصيحة المتأخرة )

**should + have + pp**  
**ought to have + pp**

2- He **should have helped** his friend but he didn't.

shouldn't have + pp  
oughtn't to have + pp

2- He **shouldn't have driven** on the wrong side of the street.

16- Mothers ..... bathe their children more often in hot weather.

- a) ought                                      b) mustn't                                      c) should                                      d) shouldn't
- 17- My school is not far. I ..... take a taxi.
- a) can                                      b) need                                      c) needn't                                      d) had to
- 18- We ..... buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.
- a) have to                                      b) must                                      c) mustn't                                      d) needn't
- 19- We ..... forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
- a) must                                      b) mustn't                                      c) needn't                                      d) don't have to
- 20- My flat is tidy. I ..... bother myself to get it cleaned today.
- a. needn't                                      b. mustn't                                      c. don't have                                      d. must
- 21- You ..... drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.
- a) needn't                                      b) mustn't                                      c) don't have to                                      d) have to
- 22- I ..... hurry. My train leaves in 5 minutes.
- a) don't have to                                      b) shouldn't                                      c) need                                      d) must
- 23- You ..... read a lot. It's a useful hobby.
- a) mustn't                                      b) must                                      c) could                                      d) would
- 24- ..... you make that noise ? It really is annoying.
- a. Can                                      b. Could                                      c. Must                                      d. Might
- 25- Children ..... climb trees in a public park.
- a) mustn't                                      b) must                                      c) should                                      d) aren't
- 26- You ..... smoke in hospital. It's banned.
- a) shouldn't                                      b) should                                      c) mustn't                                      d) ought to
- 27- You ..... drive more than 110 kmh on the motorway.
- a) must                                      b) mustn't                                      c) should                                      d) had to
- 28- I really ..... go and get some bread before the shop closes.
- a) have to                                      b) could                                      c) can                                      d) must
- 29- You ..... apologize to your friend when you do something unpleasant.
- a) would                                      b) needn't                                      c) must                                      d) shouldn't
- 30- Attending school regularly is a ..... .
- a) mustn't                                      b) must                                      c) should                                      d) necessary
- 31- You ..... finish that report tonight if you're too tired. Midday tomorrow is the deadline.
- a) need to                                      b) must                                      c) needn't                                      d) shouldn't
- 32- You ..... buy a ticket before you can go into the sports stadium.
- a) had to                                      c) have to                                      c) needn't                                      d) should
- 33- You can order your plane tickets online; you ..... use a travel agent.
- a) mustn't                                      b) don't have to                                      c) have to not                                      d) don't need
- 34- We ..... make sure that the customers are getting value for money.
- a) must                                      b) mustn't                                      c) have to                                      d) needn't
- 35- I can go on my own. You ..... come with me.
- a) don't need to                                      b) must                                      c) have to                                      d) need to
- 36- My children ..... study ancient history at school next year.
- a) have to                                      b) must                                      c) needed                                      d) needn't
- 37- We ..... get up or go to bed at particular times on holidays.
- a) don't need to                                      b) mustn't                                      c) have got                                      d) don't have
- 38- I ..... get up very early on school days.
- a) have to                                      b) mustn't                                      c) needn't                                      d) had to
- 39- The meal was for free today. You ..... for it. You should have saved your money.
- a. didn't need to pay                                      b. didn't have to pay                                      c. needn't have paid                                      d. needn't pay
- 40- I always ..... take my father's permission before I go out. That's a family rule.
- a. have to                                      b. mustn't                                      c. need                                      d. must
- 41- You ..... take that train. There's another one in ten minutes.
- a) mustn't                                      b) had to                                      c) don't have to                                      d) have to
- 42- You ..... buy that book. I can lend you mine.
- a) mustn't                                      b) need                                      c) had to                                      d) needn't
- 43- You ..... speak so loudly on your phone. It's very annoying.

- a) mustn't                      b) need to                      c) had to                      d) have to
44. When you arrive in another country, you ..... show your passport.
- a) must                      b) need                      c) had to                      d) have to
45. My staff and I ..... work twelve hours for six days a week.
- a) mustn't                      b) shouldn't                      c) had to                      d) have to
46. I ..... my room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.
- a) don't have to tidy                      b) didn't have to tidy                      c) had to tidy                      d) must have tidied
47. I'm sorry for not visiting you last night; I ..... see my doctor.
- a) needn't                      b) didn't have to                      c) had to                      d) must
48. Mona is economical; she ..... more bread; she actually has much in the fridge.
- a) needn't have bought                      b) didn't have to buy                      c) should have bought                      d) had to buy
49. You are wasteful; you ..... more sugar. We already have a lot at home.
- a) can't have bought                      b) had to buy                      c) didn't have to buy                      d) needn't have bought
50. Is it a/an ..... to take this medicine?
- a) advice                      b) unnecessary                      c) necessary                      d) must
51. You ..... spend too much money. You'll want some for your holiday.
- a) mustn't                      b) needn't                      c) don't have to                      d) must
52. You ..... pass your exams to go to university.
- a) mustn't                      b) has to                      c) had to                      d) have to
53. We ..... buy some milk from the shops because we don't have any.
- a) mustn't                      b) need to                      c) don't need to                      d) may
54. I want to go to university. I ..... apply before the end of the week.
- a) mustn't                      b) needn't                      c) don't have to                      d) need to
55. You ..... see your doctor. You look ill.
- a) must                      b) needn't                      c) can't                      d) may
56. You ..... such a long essay. The teacher asked for 300 words and you have written 700.
- a) had to write                      b) didn't have to write                      c) needn't have written                      d) should have written
57. I don't know why you apologized to him. You ..... to him.
- a) mustn't apologize                      b) don't have to apologize                      c) shouldn't apologize                      d) needn't have apologized
58. I was very tired yesterday. I ..... go to bed early.
- a) was                      b) must                      c) needn't                      d) had to
59. The students ..... written all those notes. All the information is typed for them.
- a) didn't have to                      b) needn't have                      c) have to                      d) didn't need to
60. I ..... go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
- a) needn't                      b) won't                      c) didn't have to                      d) shouldn't
61. It's a holiday tomorrow, so I ..... get up early.
- a) mustn't                      b) don't have to                      c) shouldn't                      d) won't have to
62. She added some salt to the salad but she ..... any as it became too salty.
- a) needn't add                      b) has to add                      c) mustn't add                      d) needn't have added
63. I ..... help my brothers because my mother was ill.
- a) mustn't                      b) had to                      c) needn't                      d) didn't have to
64. "It is banned to break the law." This means .....
- a) you have to break the law.                      b) you don't have to follow the law.  
c) you have to follow the law.                      d) you don't have to break the law.
65. A : Did you make your bed ?  
B : No, I ..... The housekeeper did that.
- a) needn't to                      b) didn't have to                      c) shouldn't have                      d) won't have
66. I ..... more bread. We already have a lot. – Don't worry I'll keep it in the fridge.
- a) didn't have to buy                      b) had to buy                      c) mustn't buy                      d) needn't have bought
67. School starts at 8 : 30. I ..... get there before that time.
- a) might                      b) have to                      c) can                      d) may
68. These old buildings ..... knocked down.
- a) have to be                      b) are to have                      c) had to be                      d) have to
69. We've got plenty of time. We ..... hurry.

- a) mustn't                      b) don't have to                      c) had to                      d) have to
70. I ..... go to school yesterday. It was a holiday.
- a) mustn't                      b) don't have to                      c) shouldn't                      d) didn't have to

**Rewrite the following sentence to give the same meaning:**

- |                                                     |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. It is necessary to get up early.                 | (must)       |
| 2. It's forbidden to smoke at schools.              | (mustn't)    |
| 3. It isn't necessary to go to school tomorrow.     | ( You.....)  |
| 4. I wasn't necessary to take the medicine again.   | ( didn't)    |
| 5. My friend went to school late.                   | (should)     |
| 6. Ali didn't study well.                           | (shouldn't)  |
| 7. You should study well.                           | (If)         |
| 8. It's a good idea to visit your relatives weekly. | ( should)    |
| 9. I'm sure Ali ate his breakfast.                  | (must)       |
| 10. You aren't allowed to sell drugs.               | (mustn't)    |
| 11. He didn't buy any furniture yesterday.          | ( can't).    |
| 12. It was necessary to get up early.               | (had to)     |
| 13. It's against the law to break the rules.        | ( mustn't) . |
| 14. You mustn't park here.                          | (It's.....). |
| 15. I'm sure he was here yesterday.                 | (must)       |
| 16. Perhaps she studied hard.                       | (might)      |
| 17. He should answer the questions well.            | (If- had)    |
| 18. He must go to Alex today.                       | (It's.....)  |
| 19. They missed the bus.                            | (should)     |
| 20. He didn't buy bread as they had a lot.          | (needn't).   |

**Lesson five**

**Skills**

**A descriptive essay**

**المقال الوصفي**

**What is a descriptive essay?**

**ما هو المقال الوصفي**

A descriptive essay is a piece of writing where you use words to create a picture for the reader. It's like painting a picture, but with words instead of paint! You describe a person, a place, an object, or an experience in a way that makes the reader feel like they are there.

"المقال الوصفي هو نص كتابي تستخدم فيه الكلمات لتكوين صورة للقارئ. إنه يشبه رسم لوحة، ولكن بالكلمات بدلاً من الألوان! فأنت تصف شخصاً، أو مكاناً، أو شيئاً، أو تجربة بطريقة تجعل القارئ يشعر وكأنه موجود هناك."

• To do this, you need to use your five senses:

- 1- **Sight:** What do you see? (colors, shapes ,size)
- 2- **Hearing:** What do you hear? (loud noises, Hearing :quiet whispers, music)
- 3- **Smell:** What do you smell? (fresh flowers, salty air, food cooking)
- 4- **Taste:** What do you taste? (sweet, salty, e:g bitter, spicy)
- 5- **Touch:** What do you feel? (soft, rough, cold, warm)

**How to write a Descriptive Essay**

A simple descriptive essay has three main parts:

**1. The Introduction (المقدمة)**

- 1- **The Hook:** Start with an interesting sentence to grab the reader's attention.
- 2- **The Topic:** Clearly introduce the person, place, object, or experience you are going to describe.
- 3- **The Thesis Statement:** A single sentence that states the main point or overall feeling of your description.

- **The Hook** (الجملة الجاذبة/الخاطفة): ابدأ بجملة مثيرة للاهتمام لجذب انتباه القارئ.
- **The Topic** (الموضوع): قَدِّم بوضوح الشخص، أو المكان، أو الشيء، أو التجربة التي ستقوم بوصفها.
- **The Thesis Statement** (الأنطروحة/جملة الفكرة الرئيسية): جملة واحدة تُحدد النقطة الأساسية أو الشعور العام لوصفك.

**Body Paragraphs:**

In the middle, you will have two or more paragraphs. Each paragraph should focus on a different aspect or sense. For example, one paragraph can describe what you see, and another can describe what you hear and smell.

في المنتصف، سيكون لديك فقرتان أو أكثر. يجب أن تركز كل فقرة على جانب أو حاسة مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، يمكن لفقرة واحدة أن تصف ما تراه، ويمكن لفقرة أخرى أن تصف ما تسمعه وتشمّه.

## Conclusion:

Finish by summarizing the main ideas and sharing your overall feeling about the topic

إختم بتلخيص الأفكار الرئيسية ومشاركة شعورك العام تجاه الموضوع.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: SB

1. The main goal of a descriptive essay is to .....

- a. describe a person, place, object, or experience in detail      b. tell a story  
c. argue a point      d. give instructions

2. What should a descriptive essay include to make it vivid?

- a. Opinions only      b. Sensory details and imagery  
c. Only facts      d. Long definitions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A descriptive essay uses words to ..... a picture for the reader.  
a) summarize      b) create      c) organize      d) compare
- In a descriptive essay, the writer can describe a person, a place, an object, or an .....  
a) introduction      b) paragraph      c) experience      d) conclusion
- The purpose of a descriptive essay is to make the reader feel as if they are .....  
a) writing      b) painting      c) there      d) studying
- To write a good descriptive essay, you should use your five .....  
a) paragraphs      b) hooks      c) senses      d) topics
- Which sense helps you describe colors and shapes?  
a) Hearing      b) Smell      c) Touch      d) Sight
- The sound of birds singing is described using the sense of .....  
a) taste      b) hearing      c) touch      d) sight
- The smell of fresh flowers is described through the sense of .....  
a) Touch      b) Hearing      c) Smell      d) Taste
- Sweet, salty, and spicy are examples of .....  
a) sounds      b) colors      c) tastes      d) shapes
- The words "soft" and "rough" are related to the sense of .....  
a) smell      b) sight      c) hearing      d) touch
- The first part of a descriptive essay is the .....  
a) conclusion      b) body Paragraph      c) introduction      d) thesis
- The ..... is used to catch the reader's attention at the beginning.  
a) topic      b) conclusion      c) hook      d) summary
- In the introduction, the writer should clearly introduce the .....  
a) body paragraphs      b) topic      c) ending      d) examples
- The thesis statement tells the reader the main ..... of the description.  
a) color      b) point      c) paragraph      d) sound
- The body paragraphs should focus on different ..... or senses.  
a) introductions      b) hooks      c) aspects      d) endings
- One body paragraph may describe what you see, while another describes what you .....  
a) write      b) organize      c) summarize      d) hear
- The last part of the essay is the .....  
a) Hook      b) Thesis Statement      c) Conclusion      d) Topic
- In the conclusion, you should ..... the main ideas.  
a) create      b) compare      c) summarize      d) describe
- A good conclusion also shares your overall ..... about the topic.  
a) paragraph      b) feeling      c) sentence      d) title
- A descriptive essay is like ..... a picture with words.  
a) breaking      b) painting      c) reading      d) correcting



20. Each body paragraph should focus on ..... main idea.

- a) several                      b) every                      c) one                      d) no

## Skills

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Each year, millions of tourists rush to see Venice, the unique city in Italy, before it disappears into the sea. The travelers themselves are probably unaware that their weight is adding to the problem. Venice has suggested imposing a tax on all visitors to help pay for the restoration of the ancient buildings and do research into ways of preventing further sinking. There are 1.6 billion tourists going around the world, and the impact of tourism can be serious. Some say that tourism is destroying the planet, while others say that it benefits countries. New groups of “green” tourists or “eco-tourists” are upset by the effects of mass tourism on coastal regions such as those of the Mediterranean. **They** suggest that only a few tourists should be allowed. For instance, they don’t want people who visit the Galápagos Islands in Ecuador to affect the ecological balance.

Local people should enjoy the economic benefits of tourism. In many places, it’s tourism that actually supports the local traditions and crafts, as well as the economy. The travel industry—airlines, hotels, and cruise companies—should work with local councils and governments to agree upon some rules for planning and development in tourist areas. A lot of little steps can help to ensure that the earth’s clean travel destinations remain clean for future generations of tourists.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Which of the following would be the best title for the passage? - “.....”.

- a) The History of Venice                      b) How to Travel Cheaply  
c) Tourism: Benefits and Dangers                      d) Famous Tourist Attractions in Italy

2. Which of the following best represents a balanced view of tourism?

- a) All tourism should be banned immediately.                      b) Tourism only helps poor countries.  
c) Tourism has benefits and risks, and must be managed carefully.  
d) Tourism always destroys local cultures.

21. The main idea of the passage is. ....

- a) how to visit Venice                      b) the pros and cons of tourism  
c) restoring ancient buildings                      d) the Galápagos Islands

22. Venice has suggested imposing a tax on all visitors to. ....

- a) gain lots of money    b) import goods    c) help restore the old buildings    d) build another city

23. There are ..... opinions about tourism mentioned in the passage.

- a) two                      b) three                      c) four                      d) more than four

24. The underlined pronoun “**They**” refers to. ....

- a) green companies                      b) eco-tourists                      c) Venice people    d) the Galápagos Islands

25. The airlines and hotels should work with ..... for developing tourist areas.

- a) local councils                      b) governments                      c) eco-tourists                      d) both a & b

Choose the best translation

١- على الشباب أن يتسلح بالعلم و التكنولوجيا كي يصلوا لأهدافهم

1-Young people should arm them by science and technology in order to reach their goals

2-Young people should arm themselves with science and technology in order to reach their goals

3-Young people should arm themselves by science and technology in order to reach the goals

4-Young people should arm themselves with science and technology to arrive their goals

٢-إن موقع مصر المتميز و آثارها الرائعة جعلها واحدة من أهم الدول السياحية في العالم

1- Egypt's distinguished location and its wonderful monuments make it one of the most important tourist cities in the world.

2- Egypt distinguished location and its wonderful monuments make her one of the most important tourist countries in the world.

3- Egypt distinguished location and its wonderful monuments make her one of the most important tourist countries in the world.

4- Egypt's distinguished location and its wonderful monuments make it one of the most important tourist countries in the world.

٣-إن مستقبل الحياة علي الأرض يتوقف علي نجاح الجهود التي نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئي

1-The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.

- 2-The future of life on ground depend on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.  
 3-The future of life on Earth depends on the success of our efforts to get rid of environmental pollution.  
 4-The future of life on ground depend on the success of the efforts to get rid of environmental population.

### Choose the best translation

**There is nothing humans require more than freshwater: without water we can only survive just a few days.**

١. لا يوجد شيء يحتاجه الإنسان أكثر من المياه العذبة: فبدون الماء يمكننا أن نعيش سوى أيام قليلة.
٢. لا يوجد شيء يحتاجه الإنسان أكثر من المياه العذبة: فبدون الماء لا يمكننا أن نعيش سوى أيام قليلة.
٣. يوجد شيء يحتاجه الإنسان أكثر من المياه العذبة: فبدون الماء لا يمكننا أن نعيش سوى أيام قليلة.
٤. لا يوجد شيء يحتاجه الإنسان أكثر من المياه المالحة: فبدون الماء لا يمكننا أن نعيش سوى أيام قليلة.

**2- The sun provides humans and some animals and with food as it helps the plants to make its own food by the photosynthesis process.**

١. توفر الشمس للإنسان وبعض الحيوانات والطعام لأنها تساعد النباتات على صنع طعامها من خلال عملية التمثيل الضوئي.
٢. تمد الشمس الإنسان وبعض الحيوانات بالطعام لأنها تساعد النباتات على صنع طعامها من خلال عملية التمثيل الضوئي.
٣. تمد الشمس الإنسان وكل بعض الحيوانات والطعام لأنها تساعد النباتات على صنع طعامها من خلال عملية التمثيل الضوئي.
٤. توفر الشمس للإنسان وبعض الحيوانات والطعام لأنها تساعد الكواكب على صنع طعامها من خلال عملية التمثيل الضوئي.

**3 Personal skills are qualities that are needed if you want to succeed in your career.**

- ١ المهارات الشخصية هي الصفات المطلوبة إذا كنت ترغب في النجاح في وظيفتك المهنية.
- ٢ المهارات الانسانية هي الصفات المطلوبة إذا كنت ترغب في النجاح في حياتك المهنية.
- ٣ المهارات الشخصية هي الصفات المطلوبة إذا كنت ترغب في النجاح في حياتك العلمية.
- ٤ المهارات الشخصية هي الصفات المطلوبة إذا كنت ترغب في النجاح في حياتك المهنية.

## CHAPTER two

### Preparing for the Great Day

**In the early morning**, before the sun rose, Santiago woke up. The sky was dark and full of stars. He loved this hour, when the village was quiet and the sea whispered in the distance.

He put on his old trousers, picked up his coil of lines, and stepped outside his small hut.

**The boy**, Manolin, was already waiting for him. He carried food wrapped in paper—a gift for Santiago. “Here, old man. Some black beans, rice, and a little coffee,” he said proudly.

**Santiago** accepted it gratefully. “You are good to me, boy. I will need my strength today.”

**The boy** helped him carry the lines, gaff, harpoon, and the sail, which was patched many times and looked like the flag of defeat. But Santiago carried it with pride, for he believed the sail would take him to his destiny.

**As** they walked toward the harbor, they passed other fishermen preparing their boats. Some greeted Santiago with respect, while others looked at him with pity. Santiago ignored both. He knew what he must do.

**They** reached the small wooden skiff, Santiago’s boat. It was old but seaworthy. The boy loaded the gear carefully, arranging the lines in neat coils so they would run freely when needed.

**“Can** I come with you?” Manolin asked.

“You are with a lucky boat now,” Santiago replied. “Stay with them. I will manage alone. But when I catch the big one, you will help me carry it back.”

**The boy’s eyes** shone. “I believe in you, old man.”

**They sat** together for a moment on the dock, sipping the warm coffee from tin cups. The air

smelled of salt and tar, and the sea waited silently. Santiago looked at the horizon.

"Eighty-five is my number," he said. "Today, I will go far out. Farther than the others dare to go."

**The boy** nodded. "You always go too far."

**Santiago** smiled. "That is where the big fish live."

**When** the stars began to fade and the first light of dawn touched the water, Santiago pushed his boat away from the shore. The boy held the rope for a moment, then let go.

"Good luck, old man," Manolin said softly.

"Good luck," Santiago answered, though he believed luck was only part of the story. Skill, patience, and endurance mattered more.

**The boat** moved smoothly over the calm water. Santiago rowed with steady arms, feeling the rhythm of the oars. He listened to the sounds of the sea: the splash of fish, the cries of seabirds, the gentle slap of waves. He felt at home.

**As** he rowed, he thought about his life. He remembered when he was young and strong, when he had sailed to Africa and seen lions playing on the golden beaches. He remembered storms, battles with giant fish, and long nights on the open sea. He was old now, but his spirit was not broken.

**By sunrise**, he was far from the shore. He could no longer see the lights of the village. The sea stretched wide and endless around him. Other boats had stopped closer in, but Santiago kept going. He wanted to be alone where no one else dared to fish.

**At last**, he stopped and prepared his lines. He baited them carefully with fresh sardines and lowered them into the deep blue water, at different depths. He worked with the precision of a master, for he believed that exactness brought luck.

**Then** he sat back, holding the line gently between his fingers, feeling every movement below. He waited, patient as always. The sun climbed higher, and the sea shone like glass.

**The old man** thought of the boy and smiled. "He has hope," Santiago whispered to himself. "It is good for a man to have hope. Without it, he is nothing."

**All morning** he waited. Small fish tugged at the bait, but he ignored them. He was looking for something greater, something worthy of all his strength.

**By noon**, the heat was strong, and sweat ran down his back. But Santiago did not complain. He kept his eyes on the sea, his hands ready, his heart steady. He was prepared for the great test.

**Far out**, a bird circled over the water. Santiago watched it carefully. "Where the bird circles, there are fish," he said aloud. His eyes followed the movement, and deep inside, he knew that soon, his moment would come.

### **Critical questions and their answers:**

1-How does Hemingway create an atmosphere of hope at the start of Santiago's journey?

كيف يخلق همنغواي جوًا من الأمل في بداية رحلة سانتياغو؟

He shows a new morning, a calm sea, and Santiago's confidence in a better day.

يُظهر صباحًا جديدًا وبحرًا هادئًا وثقة سانتياغو في يوم أفضل.

**2. Why do you think Santiago is described as both pitied and respected by others?**

لماذا تعتقد أن سانتياغو يوصف بأنه مثير للشفقة ومحترم في الوقت نفسه؟

People pity his bad luck but respect his courage and experience.

يشفق الناس على سوء حظه، لكنهم يحترمون شجاعته وخبرته.

**3. How does the patched sail act as a metaphor for human struggle?**

كيف يعمل الشراع المرقع كاستعارة لكفاح الإنسان؟

It shows that people can face hardships but continue with hope and strength.

يوضح أن الإنسان يمكنه مواجهة الصعوبات والاستمرار بالأمل والقوة.

**4. What does Santiago's decision to fish farther than others reveal about his spirit?**

ماذا يكشف قرار سانتياغو بالصيد بعيداً عن الآخرين عن روحه؟

It shows that he is brave, determined, and willing to take risks.

يكشف أنه شجاع ومصمم ومستعد للمخاطرة.

**5. How is Manolin's loyalty important for the old man's dignity?**

كيف يُعد ولاء مانولين مهماً لكرامة الرجل العجوز؟

His loyalty makes Santiago feel respected, valued, and not alone.

يجعل وفاؤه سانتياغو يشعر بالاحترام والتقدير وأنه ليس وحيداً.

**6. Do you think luck or preparation is more important in life? Why?**

هل تعتقد أن الحظ أم الاستعداد أكثر أهمية في الحياة؟ ولماذا؟

I think preparation is more important because it helps people use every opportunity well.

أعتقد أن الاستعداد أهم لأنه يساعد الناس على استغلال كل فرصة بشكل جيد.

**7. How does this chapter prepare readers for the great challenge to come?**

كيف يُهيئ هذا الفصل القراء للتحدي الكبير القادم؟

It shows Santiago getting ready with confidence, patience, and careful planning.

يُظهر سانتياغو وهو يستعد بثقة وصبر وتخطيط دقيق.

**8. In what way does Santiago's skiff represent his life?**

بأي طريقة يمثل قارب سانتياغو الصغير حياته؟

It is old and simple, but strong enough to face the sea like Santiago himself.

إنه قديم وبسيط، لكنه قوي بما يكفي لمواجهة البحر، تمامًا مثل سانتياغو.

**9. Why might Hemingway show Santiago rowing in silence at sunrise?**

لماذا قد يُظهر همنغواي سانتياغو يجدف في صمت عند شروق الشمس؟

The silence shows peace, concentration, and a fresh beginning.

يعبر الصمت عن السلام والتركيز والبدء الجديدة.

**10. How does Santiago's belief in hope make him a symbol of resilience?**

كيف يجعل إيمان سانتياغو بالأمل منه رمزاً للصمود؟

He never loses hope, even after many failures, and keeps moving forward.

لا يفقد الأمل أبداً رغم كثرة الإخفاقات، ويواصل التقدم دائماً.

**11. Why does Santiago believe that exactness brings luck?**

لماذا يعتقد سانتياغو أن الدقة تجلب الحظ؟

He believes careful work and skill increase the chance of success.

يعتقد أن العمل الدقيق والمهارة يزيدان فرصة النجاح.

**12. What does Santiago's choice to fish alone tell us about his personality?**

ماذا يخبرنا اختيار سانتياغو للصيد بمفرده عن شخصيته؟

It shows that he is independent, confident, and responsible.

يوضح أنه مستقل وواثق من نفسه ويتحمل المسؤولية.

**13. Why does Santiago pay close attention to the bird circling above the sea?**

لماذا يراقب سانتياغو الطائر الذي يحلق فوق البحر باهتمام؟

He knows the bird can help him find fish because of his experience.

يعرف أن الطائر يمكن أن يساعده في العثور على السمك بسبب خبرته.

**14. How does Santiago show patience throughout this chapter?**

كيف يُظهر سانتياغو الصبر طوال هذا الفصل؟

He waits quietly for the right fish and never rushes or complains.

ينتظر بهدوء السمكة المناسبة ولا يتعجل أو يشتكي.

**15. What lesson can readers learn from Santiago's actions in this chapter?**

They learn that success needs hope, hard work, and patience.

يتعلمون أن النجاح يحتاج إلى الأمل والعمل الجاد والصبر

## Test on Unit two

### 1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. To keep our streets safe, drivers must the traffic rules at all times.

- a. plant      b. renew      c. follow      d. obey      e. waste

2. "We recycle old bottles into new products." Here, "recycle" is synonymous with

- a. waste      b. reprocess      c. reuse      d. discard      e. dump

### 2. Choose the correct answer from a ,b ,c or d :

1. "The speech filled the audience with .....They were happy

- a. optimism      b. pessimism      c. confidence      d. violence

2. To offer to do something without being forced or paid is to.....

- a. sapling      b. optimism      c.volunteer      d. irresistible

3. The colors of the sunset slowly began to.....

- a. slip      b. fade      c. dig      d. wrap

4. The smell of freshly baked cake was.....

- a. warm      b. confident      c. polite      d. irresistible

5. Too many tasks at once ..... even the best students .

- a. overwhelm      b. hug      c. mirror      d. fade

6. Yara's sad expression seemed to.....

- a. fill      b. warm      c. mirror her mood      d. speak up

7. We should always..... paper and plastic to reduce waste .

- a. recycle      b. recyclable      c. recycling      d. recycled

8. You..... try this cake. It's really delicious.

- a. mustn't      b. don't have to      c. must      d. had to

9. You look tired, John. I think you .....a few days off

- a. mustn't take      b. must be taken      c. shouldn't take      d. should take

10. You ..... clean the windows. I've already cleaned them.

- a. need to      b. should      c. needn't      d. have to

11. You..... allowed to drive at more than 110 km/h on this motorway.

- a. hadn't      b. don't      c. haven't      d. aren't

12. Why did you take a taxi? You were early enough. You .....that.

- a. didn't have to do      b. had to do      c. needn't have done      d. have to do

13. Which of the following is a sense?

- a. Running      b. Reading      c. Hearing      d. talking

14. Which sentence is most likely from a descriptive essay?

- a. The book is very heavy.      b. The cake was well-baked.

- c. The red rose smelled sweet and fresh.      d. The answer is clear.

### Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (7 Marks)

Electricity is one of the most important discoveries in human history. Ancient civilizations did not understand its nature, but they observed natural phenomena such as lightning and static electricity. It was not until the 18th century that scientists began to study electricity systematically. Benjamin Franklin, Alessandro Volta, and Michael Faraday contributed significantly to understanding how electricity works. In the early 19th century, the invention of the electric battery by Volta and the development of the electric motor by Faraday opened the door to practical uses of electricity. Cities began to install electric lights, and households could use electrical appliances for the first time. Later, power stations were built to supply electricity on a larger scale. Today, electricity powers almost every aspect of modern life. It runs factories, homes, schools, hospitals, and transportation systems. Renewable energy sources such as solar, wind, and hydroelectricity are increasingly used to generate electricity



because they are clean and sustainable. Despite these advances, electricity distribution remains a challenge in remote areas. Scientists and engineers continue to improve energy storage, transmission, and efficiency to meet growing demand. Electricity has transformed human civilization, making life more comfortable, productive, and connected. Its discovery shows how curiosity, experimentation, and scientific research can change the world.

**Questions:**

- Who invented the electric battery?  
a. Faraday    b. Volta    c. Franklin    d. Edison
- Lightning and static electricity were observed by.....civilizations.  
a. modern    b. ancient    c. medieval    d. future
- Electric lights were first installed in .....  
a. factories    b. cities    c. schools    d. farms
- Renewable energy sources for electricity are considered .....  
a. limited and dangerous    b. clean and sustainable  
c. expensive and harmful    d. non-renewable
- The main idea of the passage is “.....”.  
a. The importance of batteries    b. The history and development of electricity  
c. The dangers of lightning    d. Modern transportation
- According to the passage, electricity powers almost every of life.  
a. part    b. invention    c. disease    d. observation
- The underlined word “curiosity” can be replaced by .....  
a. carelessness    b. fear    c. laziness    d. interest and desire to learn
- A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d: (2 Marks)**

Environmental protection requires cooperation between governments, organizations, and local communities.

- أ. حماية البيئة تتطلب التعاون بين الحكومات والمنظمات والمجتمعات المحلية.
- ب. حماية البيئة تتطلب التعاون بين الحكومات والمنظمات والمجتمعات المحلية.
- ج. حماية البيئة تتطلب التعاون بين الحكومات والمنظمات والمجتمعات المحلية.
- د. حماية البيئة تتطلب التعاون بين الحكومات والمنظمة والمجتمعات المحلية.

**B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d: (2 Marks)**

يساعد شرب الماء بكميات كافية يوميا في الحفاظ علي صحة الجسم والوظائف الحيوية

- Drinking enough water daily helps maintain the body's health and vital functions.
- Drinking enough water dialy helps to maintain the body's health and vital functions.
- Drinking enough water daily help to maintain the body's health and vital functions.
- Drinking enough water daily helps maintain bodies health and vital functions.

**The Novel (1 Mark)**

**Answer the following questions:**

- Do you think luck or preparation is more important in life 'Why ?
- How does this chapter prepare readers for the great challenge to come ?

**6-Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:**

- 1-It's necessary to do your tasks well. (must)
- 2-You should help the poor. (If)

**Write about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic: (3 Marks)**

“The effect of volunteering”

# Unit three

## Truth Vs. Lies

### Key vocabulary

|                |                |                    |                 |                     |                |
|----------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| appearance     | مظهر - هيئة    | lie (d)            | يكذب / كذبة     | truth(truthful)     | الحقيقة(حقيقي) |
| interaction    | تفاعل          | supportive         | داعم            | reputation          | سمعة           |
| scam(med)      | احتيال - يحتال | tactic             | اسلوب           | deceive (deception) | يخدع خداع      |
| betray(ed)     | يخون -         | exploit(ation)     | يستغل - استغلال | wise                | حكيم           |
| trap(ped)      | يحجز - فخ      | boundaries         | حدود            | make achoice        | يعمل اختيار    |
| friendship     | صداقة          | advisor            | ناصح / مستشار   | fake                | كاذب - مزيف    |
| ruin           | يدمر - تدمير   | trust (confidence) | يثق - ثقة       | rumors              | شائعات         |
| invisible      | غير مرئي       | awareness          | الوعي           | defense             | الدفاع         |
| misinformation | طريق / خط سير  | development        | تطوير - تنمية   | plan                | خطة - يخطط     |

### Important Vocabulary

|                  |              |               |                |                 |                |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| valuable         | ذو قيمة      | honesty       | الامانة        | kindness        | عطف            |
| hide(hid-hidden) | يخفي - يختفي | intention     | نية            | friendly        | ودود           |
| disappear        | يختفي        | set           |                | daily life      |                |
| fact             | الحقيقة      | favor         | مصلحة - معروف  | smile           | ابتسامة        |
| workplace        | مكان عمل     | consider      | يفكر - يعتبر   | private         | خاص            |
| act              | يتصرف - سلوك | borrow        | يستعير - يستلف | return          | يعيد           |
| spread           | ينشر - ينتشر | false         | كاذب / مزيف    | damage          | يتلف - تلف     |
| behavior         | سلوك         | embarrassed   | مرتبك          | type            | نوع - يكتب     |
| dishonesty       | خيانة        | limited       | محدود          | face-to-face    | وجه لوجه       |
| digital world    | عالم رقمي    | platform      | منصة           | social media    | وسائل التواصل  |
| copy             | ينسخ - نسخة  | prize         | جائزة          | profit          | ربح - مكسب     |
| personal         | شخصي         | data          | بيانات         | sign            | يافطة - يوقع   |
| pressure         | الضغط - يضغط | details       | تفاصيل         | protect         | يحمي           |
| pause            | توقف - يتوقف | confirm       | يؤكد           | reliable        | موثوق به       |
| sources          | موارد        | exist         | يوجد           | goodness        | الخير - الجودة |
| cautious         | حريص         | aware of      | مدرك ل         | trustworthy     | موثوق به       |
| relationships    | علاقات       | emotions      | عواطف          | socially        | اجتماعيا       |
| psychologist     | عالم نفس     | trick         | يخدع           | physically      | بدنيا          |
| genuine          | اصلي - حقيقي | risk          | مجازفة         | for free        | مجانا          |
| generation       | الجيل        | theft         | سرقة           | teenagers       | مراهقين        |
| secrets          | اسرار        | harmful       | ضار - مؤذي     | fit in          | يندمج          |
| pretend          | يتظاهر       | paperwork     | اعمال ورقية    | take control of | يسيطر علي      |
| property         | ملكية        | rush(ed)      | يندفع - مندفع  | guilty          | مذنب           |
| afraid           | خائف         | create        | يخلق - يبدع    | clear           | واضح           |
| apology          | اعتذار       | owe           | يدين           | guard           | حارس / يحرس    |
| motivate         | يحفز         | sincerity     | الاخلاص        | authentic       | اصلي - حقيقي   |
| creativity       | ابداع        | respect       | يحترم - احترم  | impression      | نطباع          |
| wars             | الحروب       | fight(fought) | يحارب          | soldiers        | جنود           |
| tanks            | دبابات       | planes        | طائرات         | bullets         | طلقات          |
| bombs            | قنابل        | experts       | خبراء          | goal            | هدف            |
| destroy          | يدمر         | confused      | مرتبك          | victims         | ضحايا          |

|           |              |             |             |                |                   |
|-----------|--------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|-------------------|
| attack    | يهاجم - هجمة | individuals | الأفراد     | career         | مهنة              |
| customers | زبائن        | weapon      | سلاح        | products       | منتجات            |
| require   | يتطلب        | mind        | عقل - يمانع | cyber bullying | التنمر الإلكتروني |
| panic     | فزع          | threat      | تهديد       | wish           | تمني - يتمني      |

### Idioms

|                            |                |                     |             |
|----------------------------|----------------|---------------------|-------------|
| trust, but verify          | حرص ولا تخون   | caught in a trap    | يقع في مأزق |
| wolves in sheep's clothing | ذئب في ثوب حمل | too good to be true | موقع اثري   |

Complete the sentences with the correct words from the box.

wolves in sheep's clothing - too good to be true - caught in a trap - trust but verify

1. That deal sounds amazing, but it might be .....
2. He seemed friendly at first, but later we discovered he was one of those .....
3. She signed the contract without reading it and soon realized she was .....
4. My father always tells me, "You should ..... when dealing with strangers.

### Definitions

|                          |                                                                      |                        |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| betray                   | To be disloyal to someone who trusts you.                            | يخون / يخذل            |
| verify                   | To check and prove that something is true.                           | يتحقق من / يتأكد       |
| be caught in a trap      | To be stuck in a difficult or dangerous situation.                   | يقع في فخ              |
| pressure                 | The act of trying to force someone to do something.                  | ضغط / يضغط على         |
| reputation               | What people generally think about someone or something.              | السمعة                 |
| scam                     | A dishonest plan to trick people, usually to get money.              | حيلة احتيالية / نصاب   |
| wolf in sheep's clothing | A dangerous person who pretends to be harmless and kind.             | ذئب في ثوب حمل / مخادع |
| exploit                  | To treat someone unfairly to get an advantage from them.             | يستغل                  |
| favor                    | A kind action that you do to help someone.                           | خدمة / معروف           |
| pause                    | To stop doing something for a short time before starting again.      | يتوقف مؤقتاً           |
| deceive                  | To make someone believe something that is not true.                  | يخدع / يضل             |
| rumor                    | A story that may not be true, passed from person to person.          | شائعة                  |
| misinformation           | Information meant to make people believe something false.            | معلومات خاطئة          |
| awareness                | The state of knowing and understanding what is happening around you. | الوعي                  |

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To ..... is to be disloyal to someone who trusts you.  
(a) deceive (b) exploit (c) betray (d) verify
2. To ..... is to check and prove that something is true.  
(a) verify (b) pause (c) spread (d) betray
3. To ..... is to be stuck in a difficult or dangerous situation.  
(a) make a choice (b) be caught in a trap (c) return a favor (d) gain weight
4. .... is the act of trying to force someone to do something.  
(a) Reputation (b) Pressure (c) Awareness (d) Favor
5. A person's ..... is what other people generally think about him or her.  
(a) rumor (b) appearance (c) reputation (d) intention

6. A/An ..... is a dishonest plan to trick people, usually to get money.  
 (a) scam (b) favor (c) platform (d) tactic
7. A ..... is someone who appears kind and harmless but is actually dangerous.  
 (a) advisor (b) wolf in sheep's clothing (c) customer (d) victim

### Expressions

|                             |                      |                           |                         |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| gain weight                 | يقلل                 | apply pressure            | يمارس الضغط             |
| build friendship            | يكون صداقات          | feel betrayed-embarrassed | يشعر بالخيانة(بالاحراج) |
| act supportively            | يتصرف بدعم           | hide true intentions      | يخفي النوايا الحقيقية   |
| confirm details             | يوكد تفاصيل          | gain (make) money         | يجني / يكسب أموالا      |
| keep secrets                | يحفظ الاسرار         | return a favor            | يرد معروفًا             |
| set a trap                  | ينصب فخ              | sign a contract           | يوقع عقد                |
| catch in a trap             | وقع في فخ            | spread stories(rumors)    | ينشر قصص (اشاعات)       |
| put on a friendly face      | يتصنع الود           | gain information          | يتحصل على معلومات       |
| gain favors                 | يحصل على معروف       | truth hurts               | الحقيقة تؤلم            |
| borrow money                | يقترض / يستلف أموالا | copy tactics              | يقلد التكتيكات          |
| damage someone's reputation | يضر بسمعة شخص ما     | exploit personal data     | يستغل البيانات          |
| make promises               | يقدم وعوداً          | ask for details           | يطلب تفاصيل             |
| ruin a career               | يدمر المهنة          | put on a friendly face    | يتصنع الود              |
| face-to-face interactions   | تفاعلات وجها لوجه    | state the argument        | يعرض الحجة              |
| rely on                     | يعتمد على / يثق      | based on                  | قائم على                |
| exploit.....for             | يستغل....من اجل      | share a post              | يشارك منشور             |
| stare at                    | يؤدي الي             | in fact                   | في الحقيقة / في الواقع  |
| accept advice               | يقبل نصيحة           | it sounds like a red flag | يبدو كأنه كلام خطير     |
| hide behind                 | يختبئ خلف            | give feedback             | يقدم تعليق              |
| suffer from                 | يعاني من             | give up                   | يتخلي عن                |
| trust in                    | يثق في               | act with-in               | يتصرف ب                 |
| suffer consequences         | يتحمل العواقب        | take advantage            | يستغل                   |
| fight wars                  | يخوض حروبا           | imited to                 | محدود علي               |
| verify facts                | يوثق الحقائق         | win trust                 | يفوز بثقة               |
| verify with                 | يشارك في             | leave feeling             | يترك بشعور              |
| fight back                  | يرد الهجوم           | protect privacy           | يحمي خصوصية             |
| require awareness           | يستلزم الوعي         | damage trust              | يزعزع الثقة             |
| fight with -against         | يقاوم باستخدام -ضد   | benefit from              | يستفيد من               |
| introduce the point         | يشرح - يقدم نقطة     | questioning mind          | عقل مناقش               |
| fight back                  | يقاوم- يرد الهجوم    | gain followers            | يكتسب متابعين           |
| a pack of lies              | مجموعة من الأكاذيب   |                           |                         |

### Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

| Words    | Meaning   | Synonyms             | Antonyms            | Meaning     |
|----------|-----------|----------------------|---------------------|-------------|
| valuable | ذو قيمة   | precious / important | worthless / useless | بلا قيمة    |
| hide     | يخفي      | cover / conceal      | show / reveal       | يكشف        |
| honest   | صادق      | truthful / genuine   | dishonest / fake    | يكشف        |
| deceive  | يخدع      | trick / cheat        | guide / be honest   | يوجه -امين  |
| private  | خاص       | personal / secret    | public / general    | عام         |
| false    | زائف      | untrue / fake        | true / real         | حقيقي       |
| damage   | يدمر      | harm / hurt          | fix / protect       | يثبت - يحمي |
| unsure   | غير متأكد | uncertain / doubtful | sure / certain      | متأكد       |

|           |              |                      |                     |              |
|-----------|--------------|----------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| disappear | يختفي        | vanish / go away     | appear / arrive     | يظهر         |
| destroy   | يدمر / يخرّب | ruin / damage        | build / fix         | يبني         |
| angry     | غاضب         | mad / upset          | calm / happy        | هاديء        |
| afraid    | خائف         | scared / frightened  | brave / safe        | شجاع         |
| famous    | مشهور        | well-known / popular | unknown / hidden    | غير معروف    |
| dangerous | خطير         | unsafe / risky       | safe / secure       | احتقار - كرة |
| hard      | صعب          | difficult / tough    | easy / simple       | امن - بسيط   |
| exciting  | مثير / مشوق  | thrilling / fun      | boring / dull       | ممل          |
| powerful  | قوي / مؤثر   | strong / mighty      | weak / helpless     | ضعيف         |
| careful   | حريص / حذر   | cautious / watchful  | careless / reckless | مهمل         |

### 1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

- A good education is very **valuable** for every student. The synonyms of "**valuable**" are .....  
a) worthless    b) precious    c) useless    d) important    e) fake
- The little boy tried to **hide** the broken vase before his parents arrived. The antonyms of "**hide**" are .....  
a) reveal    b) cover    c) conceal    d) show    e) disappear
- Everyone should be **honest** when answering the teacher's questions. The synonyms of "**honest**" are .....  
a) truthful    b) fake    c) genuine    d) dishonest    e) careless
- Some online criminals try to **deceive** people into giving their passwords. The synonyms of "**deceive**" are .....  
a) guide    b) cheat    c) trick    d) help    e) support
- You should keep your **private** information safe online. The **antonyms** of "**private**" are .....  
a) public    b) personal    c) general    d) secret    e) close
- The report contained **false** information. The synonyms of "**false**" are .....  
a) fake    b) true    c) untrue    d) real    e) honest
- Smoking can **damage** your lungs over time. The **antonyms** of "**damage**" are .....  
a) fix    b) protect    c) harm    d) hurt    e) destroy
- I was **unsure** about the correct answer, so I checked it again. The synonyms of "**unsure**" are .....  
a) doubtful    b) certain    c) uncertain    d) sure    e) confident
- The missing cat suddenly **disappeared** after the loud noise. The **antonyms** of "**disappear**" are .....  
a) appear    b) vanish    c) go away    d) arrive    e) leave
- The earthquake completely **destroyed** several buildings. The synonyms of "**destroy**" are .....  
a) damage    b) build    c) ruin    d) repair    e) fix
- My father was **angry** because I came home very late. The **antonyms** of "**angry**" are .....  
a) calm    b) upset    c) furious    d) mad    e) happy
- The little girl was **afraid** of the loud thunder. The synonyms of "**afraid**" are .....  
a) frightened    b) brave    c) safe    d) scared    e) confident
- The Pyramids are **famous** all over the world. The **antonyms** of "**famous**" are .....  
a) hidden    b) popular    c) unknown    d) well-known    e) public
- Driving too fast on wet roads is **dangerous**. The synonyms of "**dangerous**" are .....  
a) risky    b) safe    c) secure    d) unsafe    e) protected
- Learning a new language can be **hard** at first. The synonyms of "**hard**" are .....  
a) difficult    b) easy    c) simple    d) tough    e) comfortable
- The science experiment was very **exciting** for the students. The synonyms of "**exciting**" are .....  
a) dull    b) fun    c) boring    d) thrilling    e) ordinary
- The lion is a **powerful** animal. The synonyms of "**powerful**" are .....  
a) weak    b) mighty    c) helpless    d) strong    e) small
- You should be **careful** when crossing a busy street. The **antonyms** of "**careful**" are .....



## Language Notes

|                           |                                     |                           |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <b>affect</b> يؤثر علي | - have an effect on له تأثير علي    | - <b>effective</b> مؤثر   |
| <b>influence</b>          | - have an influence on له تأثير علي | - <b>influential</b> مؤثر |
| <b>impact</b>             | - have an impact on له تأثير علي    |                           |

### Test yourself:

- Egypt has a great ( affection- effect- affect ) among the countries of the Middle East.
- My family is very ( influence- affection- influential ) in the world of banks.
- Parents should have good ( influence- affection- influential ) on their children.
- El Araby is very important in the world of business. It is very ( quick – influential- smooth).

### 2. lie / lied / lied

lie / lay / lain

lay / laid / laid

Don't lie to me. I know everything.

The town lies to the east of the river.

The hens have laid a lot of eggs.

يكذب

( يرقد / ينام / يقع ) للمكان

يضع / تبيض (الدجاجة) / يعد / يرتب

He lay in bed listening to the birds singing.

He laid the book on the table.

She laid the table for four people.

### 3- be caught in a trap    يقع في فخ    set a trap    ينصب فخ

The rich man was caught in a trap so he lost his money.

The police set a trap to catch thrdangrous thief.

### 4- lend    يسلف    borrow    يستلف – يستعير

Can you lend me your car for an hour?

I borrowed Ali's car for an hour. = I borrowed a car from Ali.

### 5- owe    يدين ( عليه لشخص )    own    يمتلك

## Exercises

### 1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- Friendly ..... at school can help build strong friendships.  
a. reputation    b. interactions    c. operation    d. dependence
- The scammer tried to ..... the elderly woman by pretending to be from the bank.  
a. impress    b. interact    c. help    d. deceive
- He felt deeply ..... when his best friend shared his secret.  
a. appeared    b. made    c. insulated    d. betrayed
- He has a very good ....., because he always keeps his promises.  
a. reputation    b. interactions    c. operation    d. dependence
- Some people will try to ..... others to make quick money.  
a. impress    b. interact    c. help    d. deceive
- Although he was simply dressed, his neat ..... made a good first impression.  
(a) appearance    (b) reputation    (c) friendship    (d) awareness
- Group projects improve ..... between students and help them exchange ideas.  
(a) boundaries    (b) interaction    (c) tactic    (d) defense
- The police warned people about an online ..... that stole money from bank accounts.  
(a) development    (b) reputation    (c) scam    (d) advisor
- The coach used a clever ..... to defeat the stronger team.  
(a) rumor    (b) appearance    (c) friendship    (d) tactic
- Don't let anyone ..... you with false promises.

- (a) support (b) trust (c) deceive (d) interact
11. It is wrong to ..... a friend who has always been loyal to you.
- (a) exploit (b) betray (c) trap (d) plan
12. Some dishonest companies ..... young workers by paying them very little.
- (a) ruin (b) deceive (c) exploit (d) support
13. The hunters set a ..... to catch wild animals.
- (a) boundary (b) tactic (c) trap (d) defense
14. To ..... is to treat someone unfairly in order to gain an advantage.
- (a) support (b) exploit (c) verify (d) respect
15. A/An ..... is a kind action that you do to help someone.
- (a) favor (b) trap (c) rumor (d) scam
16. True ..... is based on honesty, respect, and trust.
- (a) appearance (b) friendship (c) awareness (d) rumor
17. One careless mistake could ..... years of hard work.
- (a) develop (b) support (c) ruin (d) plan
18. Tiny insects are almost ..... to the human eye.
- (a) fake (b) wise (c) invisible (d) truthful
19. False ..... can spread quickly on social media and confuse people.
- (a) reputation (b) misinformation (c) interaction (d) boundary
20. A person who always tells the ..... earns other people's respect.
- (a) scam (b) truth (c) tactic (d) rumor
21. Good parents are always ..... and encourage their children to succeed.
- (a) fake (b) supportive (c) invisible (d) trapped
22. To ..... is to stop doing something for a short time before continuing.
- (a) pause (b) deceive (c) betray (d) attack
23. To ..... is to make someone believe something that is not true.
- (a) exploit (b) verify (c) deceive (d) pause
24. Years of honest work gave the company an excellent ..... .
- (a) reputation (b) defense (c) trap (d) scam
25. A good leader should be ..... enough to make fair decisions.
- (a) fake (b) wise (c) invisible (d) trapped
26. Everyone should respect other people's personal ..... .
- (a) boundaries (b) rumors (c) tactics (d) interactions
27. My grandfather is the best ..... I know because he always gives useful advice.
- (a) advisor (b) victim (c) operator (d) assistant
28. Before buying anything online, you should ..... carefully.
- (a) make a choice (b) tell a lie (c) spread rumors (d) exploit others
29. The police discovered that the designer bag was ....., not original.
- (a) supportive (b) fake (c) truthful (d) wise
30. You should never spread ..... about your classmates without evidence.
- (a) plans (b) rumors (c) developments (d) boundaries
31. Children should learn how to ..... the right people.
- (a) deceive (b) trust (c) exploit (d) betray
32. A/An ..... is a story that may not be true and is passed from one person to another.
- (a) reputation (b) rumor (c) fact (d) impression
33. .... is false information intended to make people believe something that is not true.
- (a) Awareness (b) Misinformation (c) Development (d) Interaction
34. Road safety ..... has reduced the number of traffic accidents.
- (a) awareness (b) reputation (c) appearance (d) trap
35. Technology plays an important role in the ..... of modern education.
- (a) interaction (b) development (c) rumor (d) tactic
36. We need a clear ..... before starting such a large project.
- (a) defense (b) friendship (c) plan (d) appearance

- 37.The lawyer prepared a strong ..... to prove that his client was innocent.  
(a) defense (b) appearance (c) reputation (d) scam
- 38.He admitted that he had told a ..... to avoid punishment.  
(a) truth (b) lie (c) plan (d) friendship
- 39.Honest people are always ....., even in difficult situations.  
(a) trapped (b) truthful (c) fake (d) invisible
- 40.Education is one of the most ..... things a person can have.  
(a) limited (b) valuable (c) false (d) private
- 41.People trust him because of his ..... and sincerity.  
(a) kindness (b) platform (c) honesty (d) data
- 42.A small act of ..... can make someone's day much better.  
(a) profit (b) damage (c) kindness (d) behavior
- 43.The little boy tried to ..... the broken glass before his parents arrived.  
(a) borrow (b) spread (c) hide (d) return
- 44.The stars slowly ..... as the sun began to rise.  
(a) copied (b) disappeared (c) acted (d) spread
- 45..... is the state of knowing and understanding what is happening around you.  
(a) Sincerity (b) Awareness (c) Honesty (d) Creativity
- 46.Regular exercise should be part of your ..... .  
(a) workplace (b) daily life (c) platform (d) prize
- 47.It is a well-known ..... that water freezes at 0°C.  
(a) favor (b) sign (c) fact (d) intention
- 48.Could you do me a ..... and carry these books for me?  
(a) favor (b) profit (c) type (d) platform
- 49.Her warm ..... made everyone feel welcome.  
(a) damage (b) smile (c) data (d) behavior
- 50.Safety rules must be followed in every ..... .  
(a) workplace (b) platform (c) prize (d) type
- 51.You should carefully ..... all the available choices before making a decision.  
(a) borrow (b) consider (c) spread (d) copy
- 52.May I ..... your dictionary until tomorrow?  
(a) return (b) damage (c) borrow (d) hide
- 53.Please ..... the library book before next Monday.  
(a) spread (b) return (c) sign (d) disappear
- 54.We should ..... politely even when we disagree with others.  
(a) act (b) hide (c) profit (d) copy
- 55.The news quickly ..... across the country.  
(a) disappeared (b) spread (c) borrowed (d) considered
- 56.The report was completely ..... and contained many incorrect details.  
(a) valuable (b) private (c) false (d) friendly
- 57.Smoking can cause serious ..... to your lungs.  
(a) favor (b) damage (c) prize (d) intention
- 58.Good ..... is one of the most important qualities of a successful student.  
(a) behavior (b) platform (c) data (d) sign
- 59.Cheating in exams is a form of ..... .  
(a) kindness (b) honesty (c) dishonesty (d) friendship
- 60.We have only a ..... amount of time to finish the project.  
(a) valuable (b) limited (c) private (d) friendly
- 61.We live in a ..... where technology affects every part of our lives.  
(a) workplace (b) digital world (c) daily life (d) type
62. The company launched a new online ..... for language learning.  
(a) platform (b) favor (c) sign (d) behavior
- 63.Many teenagers spend hours every day using ..... .

- (a) social media (b) workplace (c) daily life (d) kindness
64. Please don't ..... my homework. Try to solve the questions yourself.  
(a) spread (b) sign (c) copy (d) borrow
65. She won first ..... in the national science competition.  
(a) type (b) prize (c) platform (d) favor
66. The company made a large ..... after introducing its new product.  
(a) profit (b) damage (c) fact (d) sign
67. You should never share your ..... information with strangers online.  
(a) limited (b) personal (c) false (d) friendly
68. Scientists collect ..... before reaching a conclusion.  
(a) smile (b) data (c) favor (d) prize
69. Please ..... your name at the bottom of the form.  
(a) borrow (b) spread (c) sign (d) hide
70. His ..... was to help poor children receive a good education.  
(a) intention (b) platform (c) damage (d) type
71. Our new neighbour is very ..... and always greets everyone.  
(a) private (b) friendly (c) false (d) limited
72. This conversation is ....., so please don't tell anyone about it.  
(a) valuable (b) personal (c) private (d) friendly
73. He wrote a sincere ..... after realizing he had hurt his friend's feelings.  
(a) impression (b) apology (c) weapon (d) career
74. I still ..... my brother some money that I borrowed last month.  
(a) motivate (b) attack (c) owe (d) require
75. The security ..... checked everyone's ID before allowing them to enter the building.  
(a) expert (b) customer (c) guard (d) soldier
76. Good teachers always ..... their students to work hard and achieve success.  
(a) motivate (b) destroy (c) attack (d) owe
77. Everyone appreciated her ..... because she spoke honestly from the heart.  
(a) panic (b) sincerity (c) threat (d) career
78. The museum displayed an ..... painting by a famous artist.  
(a) authentic (b) confused (c) limited (d) false
79. Reading and travelling can improve your ..... and help you think of new ideas.  
(a) respect (b) creativity (c) panic (d) weapon
80. Students should show ..... to their teachers and classmates.  
(a) impression (b) sincerity (c) respect (d) wish
81. The candidate made a good ..... during the job interview.  
(a) impression (b) bullet (c) threat (d) apology
82. Many innocent people suffer during ..... between countries.  
(a) careers (b) wars (c) goals (d) products
83. Brave firefighters ..... dangerous fires to save people's lives.  
(a) fight (b) owe (c) require (d) destroy
84. The ..... protected their country with courage.  
(a) customers (b) victims (c) soldiers (d) experts
85. Modern ..... are used in many military operations.  
(a) products (b) tanks (c) careers (d) wishes
86. Fighter ..... flew over the city during the military exercise.  
(a) bombs (b) bullets (c) planes (d) goals
87. The police found several ..... at the crime scene.  
(a) bullets (b) impressions (c) careers (d) customers
88. The army safely removed the ..... before they could explode.  
(a) threats (b) bombs (c) products (d) wishes
89. Medical ..... are working together to develop new treatments.  
(a) experts (b) guards (c) customers (d) victims

90. Her main ..... is to become a successful doctor.  
(a) weapon (b) goal (c) panic (d) sincerity
91. Eating too much fast food may cause you to ..... weight.  
(a) sign (b) gain (c) keep (d) ask
92. The doctor had to ..... pressure to stop the bleeding.  
(a) gain (b) spread (c) apply (d) make
93. School activities help students ..... friendships with classmates from different backgrounds.  
(a) build (b) exploit (c) ruin (d) borrow
94. A true friend will always ..... supportively when you are facing difficulties.  
(a) act (b) set (c) gain (d) copy
95. Some dishonest people ..... their true intentions to deceive others.  
(a) hide (b) state (c) return (d) confirm
96. Many successful people ..... money by starting their own businesses.  
(a) gain (b) feel (c) put (d) keep
97. Good friends know how to ..... secrets and never reveal them to others.  
(a) copy (b) gain (c) keep (d) exploit
98. I helped my neighbour last week, and he promised to ..... the favor someday.  
(a) ruin (b) return (c) spread (d) sign
99. Hunters often ..... a trap to catch wild animals.  
(a) set (b) gain (c) make (d) borrow
100. He had to ..... money from the bank to pay his university fees.  
(a) borrow (b) gain (c) make (d) copy

ارجع صلي  
انت في نعم بفضل الله رب العالمين  
لا تنسي صلاتك  
ان الصلاة تنهي عن الفحشاء والمنكر والبغى



# Grammar

المقرر على الصف الاول الحالة الصفرية والاولى والثانية ويتم شرح الثالث الاعدادي لان تم دراستها في الصف الثالث الاعدادي

## If

### If Conditionals

#### The Zero Conditional :

الحالة الصفرية

**If + مضارع بسيط , مضارع بسيط = when**

\* تستخدم الحالة الصفرية شرط مؤكد حدوثه ( مع الحقائق العلمية و الكونية و القوانين الثابتة )  
- If water **boils** , it **changes** into steam.

|                                                                          |                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| ► If a volcano <b>erupts</b> , it <b>sends</b> dust into the atmosphere. | ► If you <b>put</b> a stone in water , it <b>sinks</b> . |
| ► If water <b>freezes</b> , it <b>turns</b> into ice.                    | ► If you <b>mix</b> red and green , you <b>get</b> brown |
| ► If you <b>put</b> ice in the sun , it <b>melts</b>                     |                                                          |

◆ تعبر هذه الحالة عن حقيقة أو مواقف معتادة ولاحظ أننا في هذه الحالة يمكن أن نستخدم **when** بدلا من **If**:

|                                                           |                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| ► If I <b>have</b> time, I <b>usually walk</b> to school. | ► If you <b>read</b> too much , you <b>have</b> a headache |
| When I <b>have</b> time , I <b>usually walk</b> to school | ► I stay home if / when I feel ill                         |

► If the bark of young trees **is** badly damaged, they **die**.

-What **do** you **do** if (when) you **feel** tired?

إذا تم تخصيص الحالة العلمية لا تكون علمية

If it **rains** heavily , streets **become** muddy.

If it **rains** heavily **today** , **our** streets **will become** muddy.

#### 1) The First Conditional :

الحالة الأولى

**If + مضارع بسيط , مستقبل بسيط ( will-can- may+ inf)**

◆ تستخدم الحالة الاولى للتعبير عن أحداث محتملة الوقوع في المستقبل. (تنبؤ - وعد - تهديد) = ( احتمال وقوع الفعل كبير )

مصدر + **should** أو ( أو فعل امر ) / مصدر + **will** ⇒ مضارع بسيط ⇒ **If / unless** - 1

|                                                                                                                       |                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| ► If they <b>arrive</b> early, they <b>will catch</b> the metro. (احتمال)                                             |                                                       |
| ► If he <b>plays</b> well, he <b>will win</b> . (توقع / إمكانية)                                                      | ► <b>Unless</b> he plays well , he <b>will lose</b> . |
| ► If you <b>are</b> ill , you <b>should go</b> to hospital ( <b>should / ought to / had better - must - have to</b> ) |                                                       |
| ► If you <b>can't dictate</b> your conditions, you <b>should negotiate</b> . تتفاوض .                                 |                                                       |
| ► If you <b>see</b> Ahmed, <b>give</b> him my regards.                                                                | ► If you <b>see</b> a thief, <b>call</b> the police   |
| (من الممكن ان ( <b>should</b> ) تحل محل If في الحالة الأولى)                                                          |                                                       |

► **Should** my mother **help** me with my homework , I **will finish** it early .

► **Should** he **concentrate** , he **will understand** ► if he **concentrates** , he **will understand**

♣ **If = as long as = in case = provided (that) = providing = only if + جملة كاملة**

► If she **comes** , they **will welcome** her. ► **As long as** she **comes** , they **will welcome** her.

♣ ( **in case** ) أحيانا تدل على حدوث جواب الشرط قبل فعل الشرط

► I **will take** some traveller's cheque with me **in case** I run out of cash .

► I **will take** the umbrella **in case** it rains . ( I **will take** it before it **rains** )

► I **will take** the umbrella with me **if** it **rains** . ( I **won't take** it till it **rains** first )

► **in case of = in the event of = by = with + ing ( اسم )**

► In the event of making noise , I will dismiss **يطرد** you .

► In case of rain ,we will cancel the match .    ► In case of her coming, I will welcome her

♣ - لاحظ الكلمات الآتية ومعناها والا : ( else / or / otherwise )

► You must take your umbrella , or (otherwise) you will get wet.

► If you don't take your umbrella, you will get wet

► You should study hard or ( else ) you will fail

► If you don't study hard , you will fail

♣ Without / But for + noun اسم = If it + isn't + for + noun

► Without ( but for ) your help , I will die.

► If it isn't for your help , I will die

unless = if not

► If he doesn't hurry , he won't catch the train

. ► Unless he hurries , he won't catch the train

► He won't attend the party unless you invite him .

► Unless she does her work properly , she will be dismissed .

## **The Second Conditional : الحالة الثانية**

**المصدر + would, could, might , ماضي بسيط + If +**

\* تستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن أحداث غير محتمل حدوثها في الحاضر أو المستقبل  
\* وتستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن النصيحة ،

1 - If ⇒ ماضي بسيط ⇒ ( مصدر + would )

تعبّر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير حقيقي في الحاضر وكذلك إعطاء النصائح :

• If he **came** late, I **would punish** him.      • If I **were** you, I **would study** well.

• He **plays** well so he **wins** the race.      • If he **didn't play** well, he **wouldn't win** the race.

• If he **didn't live** near me, we **wouldn't see** each other.

♣ يمكن أن تعبّر الحالة الثانية أحيانا عن شيء مستحيل أو شيء مناقض للواقع

• If I **were** a bird, I'd fly.      • If I **were** in your shoes . I **would go** to the doctor

• If I **were** younger, I'd go mountaineering.      • If he **were** a doctor, he **would help** us.

لاحظ الجمل الآتية

► If I **had written** work , I **would do** it at once .

► If he **were paralysed** , he **would have to** use a wheelchair .

♣ - يمكن استخدام ( **were / Had ? Should** ) بدلا من ( **If** ) في الحالة الثانية :

لاحظ ان ( had ) في الحالة الثانية يأتي بعدها اسم مملوك

♣ If I **had** a new suit . I **would go** to the party .

♣ If I **had a complicated** problem , I **would consult** my teacher .

لاحظ استخدام المصدر مع ( **should** )

♣ **Should it be fine** , I would go out      ♣ If it **were fine** , I **would go** out .

♣ **Should my father have** a car , he **would collect me** from school every day .

لاحظ استخدام ( **were** ) مع الصفة او الاسم او التصريف الثالث في المبني للمجهول في الجمل الآتية

♣ **Were I rich** , I **would help** them. - **were they rewarded** , they **would better** job next time

♣ **Were I a doctor** , I would help you . //

♣ - لاحظ استخدام ( **to** ) قبل الفعل الأساسي عندما نستخدم ( **Were** ) بدلا من ( **If** ) :

♣ **Were he to study hard** , he **would pass** the exam.

♣ **Were he to study hard** , he **would get** full marks.

### 3) The Third Conditional : الحالة الثالثة

**If + ماضي تام ( had+pp) , ( would, could, might ) have + PP.**

الحالة الشرطية الثالثة تستخدم للحديث عن مواقف غير حقيقية في الماضي، أي مواقف لم تحدث، ونتيجتها الخيالية التي كان من الممكن أن تحدث ( تستخدم للتعبير عن مواقف لم تحدث في الماضي ونتائجها الافتراضية )

3. If ⇒ ماضي تام ⇒ **would have + p . p**

♣ تعبر الحالة الثالثة عن استحالة حدوث الشيء في الماضي وكذلك الندم :

♣ If they had taken a taxi, they wouldn't have been late.

♣ If he had seen me, he would have said hello. ( He didn't see me. He didn't say hello.)

♣ If you had studied harder , you would have got full marks .

♣ – يمكن استخدام ( Had ) بدلا من ( If ) في الحالة الثالثة كالآتي :

♣ Had it rained so heavily , we would have floods.

♣ Had he followed the instructions, the machine wouldn't have stopped.

Without / but for + اسم = if it hadn't been for + ing ( اسم )

• But for ( without ) his help, I would have failed .

► If it hadn't been for your help , I would have failed .

► Unless it had been for your help , I would have failed

مواقف خيالية لم تحدث في الماضي

-If they **had scored** one more goal, they **wouldn't have lost** the match.

إذا كانوا قد أحرزوا هدفاً إضافياً، لما كانوا خسروا المباراة .

الندم/الفرص الضائعة

If I **had gone**, I **would have met** her.

-If I **had studied**, I **would have passed**.

-If she **had left** early, she **would have caught** the train.

إعطاء الأعذار

If he **had told** me, I **would have helped**.

-لو كان أخبرني، لكنت ساعدته.

- If we **had not been** late, we **would have seen** the tennis match.

النفى

- يمكن أن تأتي **if** في منتصف الجملة في جميع الحالات :

-He **would have seen** the Pyramids if he **had travelled** to Egypt.

**1. Choose the correct answers:**

1- If you study well , he .....

a. succeed b. will succeed c. would succeed d. would have succeeded

2- If he studies hard, he .....

a. succeed b. will succeed c. would succeed d. would have succeeded

3- If he studied hard, he .....

a. succeed b. will succeed c. would succeed d. would have succeeded

4- If he had studied hard, he .....

a. succeed b. will succeed c. would succeed d. would have succeeded

5- If he ..... well , he will win.

a. plays b. played c. would played d. would have played

6- If he ..... , he would win .

a. plays b. played c. would played d. would have played

7- If he ..... , he would have won .

a. plays b. had played c. would played d. would have played

8.If we don't go now, we ..... catch the bus.

- a) won't                      b) wouldn't                      c) didn't                      d) couldn't

8.If we leave now, we ..... the train.

- a) catch                      b) will catch                      c) would catch                      d) might have caught

9.If Ali lost his job, he ..... look for work in the city.

- a) will                      b) would                      c) will not                      d) would not

10. If people lived on the moon, they ..... tired and bored.

- a) will be                      b) may be                      c) would have been                      d) would be

**لاحظ**

1. If you ( come – came – had come ) , you **would have** a happy time.

2 . If you ( come – came – had come ) , you **would have had** a happy time.

1-If I **had** enough money , I ( would buy – will buy – would have bought) a car .

2-If I **had had** enough money , I ( would buy – will buy – would have bought) a car .

3- If I (knew –know- had known) the appointment, I 'd have come .

4..... he understand the story if he read the summary?

- a) Will                      b) Did                      c) Would                      d) Can

**\* عند إستخدام ( If ) لربط جملتين في الحالة الثالثة .... نتبع الخطوات التالية :**

- إذا كان زمن الجملة الأولى ماضى ..... نستخدم الحالة الثالثة .

١- **ننفي المثبت ونثبت المنفي** . ( أو نعكس الصفات أو الأفعال ) .

٣- نحدد الرابط بين الجملتين .

- إذا كان الرابط بين الجملتين ( **so & therefore & thus & consequently** ) ... يحذف الرابط ولا نعكس الجملتين .

- إذا كان الرابط بين الجملتين ( **because & since & as** ) ... يحذف الرابط ونعكس الجملتين .

**أمثلة محلولة**

1-He **didn't study** hard, so he **failed** . ( ماضى منفي سيكون ماضى تام مثبت )

= If he **had studied** hard , he **wouldn't have failed** ( **would have succeeded** )

2. I didn't have much money, so I didn't buy that expensive toy. (If)

=If I **had had** more money, I **would have bought** that expensive toy.

3. I forgot my library card. **Therefore** , I couldn't borrow a book. (If)

= If I hadn't forgotten my library card, I would have been able to borrow a book.

5. I **was** tired. So, I **didn't watch** the football match. (If)

= If I **hadn't been** tired, I **would have watched** the football match.

6. I **arrived** on time because my father **drove** me to school. (If)

= If my father **hadn't driven** me to school, I **would have been late**/I **wouldn't have arrived on time**.

7. I **didn't say** hello because I **didn't recognise** your cousin. (If)

= If I **had recognised** your cousin, I **would have said** hello.

**\* عند إستخدام ( If ) لربط جملتين في الحالة الثانية .... نتبع الخطوات التالية :**

-إذا كان زمن الجملة الأولى مضارع ..... نستخدم الحالة الثانية ( بدون فعل ناقص أو عبارة شك أو يقين ) في جملة جواب الشرط.

1.He isn't a doctor so he can't help you. (If)

- If he **were** a doctor, he **could** help you.

2.He doesn't have a car so he will use a taxi. (If)

- If he **had** a car, he **wouldn't** use a taxi.

3. He dives fast because he was rush. (If)

- If he **weren't** rush, he **wouldn't** drive fast.

4. You should study hard. (If) = If I were you , I 'd study hard.

**Rewrite the following sentence to give the same meaning:**

1.Heating water leads to exaporation . (If)

2. If you get up late, you will go to school late. (Unless)

3. Unless you run quickly , you won't catch the train. (If)

4.I'm sure you succeed but you must study hard. (If)

5.Perhaps I will be rich ,if so I will buy a villa. (If)

6. Ali can't go to school as she is very ill. (If)

7.He doesn't have money, so He can't buy a car. (If)

8. Touching the screen makes the mobil works. ( If)
9. He can't eat well as his teeth hurt him. ( If)
11. Heshould help the lay boys. ( If)
- 12.Wedon't believe him as he is a liar. (If)
- 13.I advise you not to smoke. (If)
- 14.He is poor so hehe lives in a furnished flat. (If)
- 15.Ali won't come to school because he is ill. (If)
16. He must be here on time or he won't enter the class. (If)
- 17.Ali didn't have enough money so he didn't buy that expensive car. (If)
- 18.I didn't write to him because I didn't know his address. (If)
- 19.He wasn't well, so he didn't come to the party. (Were)
- 20.She didn't practise, so she didn't win the race. (If)
- 21.He didn't go to the club because he had no money. (Had)
- 22.If I hadn't had enough time, I wouldn't have gone to the cinema. (so)
- 23.He didn't play well, so he didn't win the match. (If)
- 24.If she had enough money, she would have bought a dress. (so)
- 25.He had a car so he didn't use cars. (if)
- 26.He didn't study well, he failed. (If)
- 27.He didn't attend the meeting because he came late . (If)
28. He didn't help you because he wasn't a doctor. (If)

### **EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR**

#### **Choose the correct answer :**

- 1- If you watch too much television, you..... your eyes.  
a will damage                      b would damage                      c won't damage                      d would have damaged
- 2- If you..... red and green paint, you get brown paint.  
a mixed                      b will mix                      c had mixed                      d mix
- 3- If Ahmed had read that book, he..... what happened at the end.  
a knew                      b will know                      c would know                      d would have known
- 4- If I went to London, I..... my English every day!  
a practise                      b will prastice                      c would practise                      d would have practised
- 5-I will go to the park if you..... with me.  
a come                      b come                      c came                      d will come
- 7- If I went to Australia, I..... my cousins.  
a will see                      b saw                      c would see                      d had seen
- 8- Adel..... that phone if it hadn't been so expensive.  
a might buy                      b might have bought                      c will have bought                      d had bought
- 9- I would have that mobile if I ..... enough money.  
a had had                      b had                      c have had                      d would have
- 10- What..... If you got lost in a big city?  
a you would do                      b did you do                      c would you do                      d you did
- 11- What if your passport ..... ? – Surely, I'd inform the police.  
a had stolen                      b had been stolen                      c stole                      d was stolen
- 12- Iron ..... if you leave it in the open air.  
a rust                      b will rust                      c rusts                      d would rust
- 13 Contact the ambulance if there.....an accident.  
a was                      b is                      c were                      d will be
- 14- If my friend .....supportive, I wouldn't have been able to solve the problem.  
a hadn't done                      b had done                      c had been                      d hadn't been
- 15- What ..... happened if my father had refused to help me?  
a have                      b might have                      c had                      d might have been
- 16- I will go to Alex if so, I .....you.  
a contact                      b will be contacted                      c will contact                      d would contact
- 17- ..... help me if I were in trouble?  
a Will you                      b Would you                      c Did you                      d Can you
- 18- If you .....more careful, you would have minimized your mistakes.



- a had been                      b were                      c had                      d had had  
**19- I ..... go to the club, if I have time. I haven't decided yet.**  
a would                      b may                      c should                      d have to  
**20- If she read the news, she ..... shocked to read about the terrible accident.**  
a is                      b will be                      c would be                      d were  
**21- If the problem ..... well, we would have reached a reasonable solution.**  
a discussed                      b was discussed                      c had discussed                      d had been discussed  
**22-If you go out , .....the porter to bring me the keys.**  
a-will tell                      b-would tell                      c-tell                      d-won't tell  
**23-If it is cold this month , our plants .....**  
a-die                      b-will die                      c-would die                      d-had died  
**24-If balloon is filled with air, it.....**  
a-may rise                      b-would rise                      c-rises                      d-will rise  
**25-If those goats eat the roots of my trees, the trees .....**  
a-die                      b- would die                      c- have died                      d- will die  
**26- If water freezes, it.....into ice.**  
a-will turn                      b-would turn                      c- turns                      d-turned  
**27-If it went on raining for much longer, the river .....**  
a-will flood                      b-would flood                      c-would have flooded                      d-floods  
**28- If the farmer's fields get very dry this summer, he.....them.**  
a- irrigates                      b- will irrigate                      c- would irrigate                      d- would have irrigate  
**29-if you heat ice, it.....**  
a-would melt                      b-melted                      c-melts                      d-will melt  
**30-If there is a sandstorm tonight, the town ..... full of sand tomorrow.**  
a-is                      b-would                      be c-will be                      d-would have been  
**31-If you mix yellow and blue, you.....green.**  
a-would get                      b-got                      c-will get                      d-get  
**32-If you heat water, it .....**  
a-will boil                      b-would boil                      c- boils                      d-boiled  
**33-If I read in bed, I ..... asleep. It's a habit.**  
a-could fall                      b-fall                      c-falling                      d-would fail  
**34-Tarek is ill. If he's better tomorrow, he.....to school.**  
a-will come                      b-would come                      c-comes                      d-come  
**35-If I were rich, I ..... a palace!**  
a- built                      b-would build                      c-will built                      d- would have built  
**36-If Egypt had a lot of rain, it ..... a lot more trees.**  
a-might have                      b-will have                      c-had had                      d-may have  
**37-If you had gone to the sports club, you ..... Ali.**  
a-could see                      b-will see                      c-saw                      d-would have seen  
**38-If scientists study the rings of trees, they ..... information about our climate in the past.**  
a-would find                      b-would have found                      c-can find                      d-found  
**39-If you pick those apples now, they ..... very sweet.**  
a-won't taste                      b-doesn't taste                      c-wouldn't taste                      d-didn't taste  
**40-Water ..... if the temperature is zero or below.**  
a-would freeze                      b-freezes                      c-can freeze                      d-will freeze  
**41-I .....a headache if I spend too long on the computer.**  
a-could get                      b-will get                      c-get                      d-would get  
**42-If she trains hard, she ..... next week's race.**  
a-wins                      b-would win                      c-will win                      d-win  
**43-If you practise a sport, you.....better at it.**  
a-could get                      b-will get                      c-get                      d-would get  
**44-If you practise a sport, you.....in the sports team.**  
a- get                      b-will get                      c-would have got                      d-would get  
**45-If you read quickly, you ..... quickly too.**  
a-learn                      b-learned                      c-would learn                      d-might learn  
**46-If he read quickly, he .....the book tomorrow.**  
a-would finish                      b-will finish                      c-finish                      d-would have finished  
**47- If you can't dictate your conditions, you..... negotiate.**

- a- will                      b- should                      c- need                      d- ought
- 48-if we plant trees, then we.....cleaner air.
- a-will be having                      b-have                      c-will have d-will have had
- 49- If our heart stops working, death soon ..... .
- a. follow                      b. will follow                      c. follows                      d. followed
- 50-if I had written work, I .....it
- a-would do                      b-will do                      c-would have done                      d-did
- 51-If the money he had .....enough , he would have bought the car.
- a-had                      b-been                      c-had been                      d-were
- 52-Nabila always..... her mother if she has too much to do.
- a-will help                      b- won't help                      c- would help                      d-helps
- 53- If omar.....all his money, he would have to borrow.
- a-spends                      b- spent                      c- had spent                      d-was spending
- 54-Had it rained so heavily, we ..... floods.
- a-would have                      b-wouldn't have had                      c-would have had                      d-will have
- 55- ..... he arrived early yesterday, he could have attended the conference.
- a) Hadn't                      b) Had                      c) Unless                      d) If
- 56- .....coming late,you will be punished.
- a- unless                      b- in case of                      c- if                      d- without
57. ....he enough money, he would buy anew car.
- a. Had                      b. Were                      c. If                      d. Unless
- 58-.....she to work hard, he would succeed.
- a. Had                      b. Were                      c. If                      d. Unless
- 59-Without his help, I ----- that job. I'm really very thankful to him.
- a. won't take                      b. wouldn't take                      c. wouldn't have taken                      d. didn't take
- 60-.....you have any problem, give me a ring immediately.
- a- Were                      b- Should                      c- Unless                      d- Had
- 61-..... his intelligence, he wouldn't pass all these tests.
- a. If it isn't for                      b. If it weren't for                      c. Unless there is                      d. In case of

## Lesson Five

### Essay Writing Development Plan

الاجزاء الرئيسية للمقال

المقدمة

#### 1-Introduction

##### -Hook:

- start with a strong question

##### -Background

جملة الجاذبة

ابدا بسؤال قوي

التمهيد او الخلفية

-هو جملة أو جملتان تأتيان في الفقرة الافتتاحية (Introduction) لتوضيح الفكرة العامة للموضوع للقارئ قبل الدخول في التفاصيل الدقيقة .

-الهدف منه : يربط بين جملة جذب الانتباه (Hook) وبين الفكرة الرئيسية للمقال (Thesis Statement) لكي يفهم القارئ سياق الموضوع .

##### -Thesis Statement

الجملة الرئيسية

- جملة واحدة قوية وواضحة تأتي في نهاية المقدمة (Introduction)، وتلخص الفكرة أو الرأي الرئيسي الذي يدافع عنه الكاتب في المقال بأكمله .

- الهدف منها : بمثابة الخريطة للمقال؛ تخبر القارئ بالضبط ما هو موقف الكاتب وما الذي سيناقشه في فقرات الموضوع (Body Paragraphs).

#### 2-Body paragraph

الفقرة

كل فقرة موضوع (Body Paragraph) يجب أن تحتوي على عنصرين أساسيين :

1 Topic Sentence جملة الموضوع : (وهي أول جملة في الفقرة، وتخبر القارئ بالفكرة المحددة التي ستحدث عنها هذه الفقرة فقط .

2 Supporting Details & Examples التفاصيل الداعمة والأمثلة : (جمل تشرح الفكرة بالتفصيل وتقدم أمثلة واقعية لإقناع القارئ .)

## الخاتمة

**الخاتمة هي ملخص سريع لما تم مناقشته، وتتكون من عنصرين أساسيين**  
**إعادة صياغة الجملة الرئيسية**

## 1-Restate Thesis

**Summarize your main argument in different words.**

## 2-Final Thought

(الفكرة النهائية / النصيحة)

**End with a reflection or a call to action.**

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. SB**

1. The main purpose of the introduction in an essay is to .....
  - a. list references
  - b. present the topic and thesis statement
  - c. summarize the conclusion
  - d. include dialogue
2. The thesis statement is usually found .....
  - a. At the end of the body
  - b. In the middle of the essay
  - c. At the end of the introduction
  - d. In the conclusion only
3. The function of the conclusion is to .....
  - a. introduce a new idea
  - b. repeat the first sentence
  - c. summarize main points and restate the thesis
  - d. list all sources
4. A well-organized essay should have .....
  - a. random ideas
  - b. clear transitions and logical order
  - c. only opinions
  - d. many questions
5. What is a topic sentence?
  - a. A sentence that ends the essay
  - b. The first sentence of a body paragraph that states its main idea
  - c. A sentence in the conclusion only
  - d. A sentence with no purpose
6. Which comes first in a typical essay outline?
  - a. Body paragraphs
  - b. Conclusion
  - c. Thesis statement
  - d. References
7. An outline should be written .....
  - a. after finishing the essay
  - b. in full paragraphs
  - c. only if the teacher asks
  - d. before writing the first draft
8. The main goal of a descriptive essay is to .....
  - a. describe a person, place, object, or experience in detail
  - b. tell a story
  - c. argue a point
  - d. give instructions
9. What should a descriptive essay include to make it vivid?
  - a. Opinions only
  - b. Sensory details and imagery
  - c. Only facts
  - d. Long definitions
10. What does "imagery" mean in writing?
  - a. Pictures printed in the essay
  - b. Words that create mental pictures and sensory experiences
  - c. Drawing a map
  - d. Using bullet points

## Skills

### Choose the best translation

**1- Teachers in Egypt suffer from low salaries compared to the great role they must play in the lives of our children.**

- ١ - عاني المعلمون في مصر من دنو رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يجب ان يلعبوه في حياه ابنائنا
- ٢ - يعاني المعلمون في مصر من تدني رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور المعظم الذي يجب ان يلعبوه في حياه ابنائنا
- ٣ - يعاني المعلمون في مصر من تدني رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يجب ان يلعبوه في حياه ابنائنا
- ٤ - عاني المعلمون في مصر من دنو رواتبهم ، بالمقارنة بالدور العظيم الذي يجبوا ان يلعبوه في حياه ابنائنا

**2-Making people happy is one of the values that create affection among them. It doesn't take much effort to put a smile on someone's face.**

- أ- إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق المودة بينهم.لن تحتاج الي جهد كبير لرسم ابتسامة علي وجه شخص ما  
ب- إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق الراحة بينهم.لن تحتاج الي جهد كبير لرسم ابتسامة علي وجه شخص ما  
ج- إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق المودة بينهم.لن تحتاج الي جهد كبير لطلب ابتسامة من وجه شخص ما

د- إسعاد الناس أحد القيم التي تخلق الراحة بينهم. فستحتاج إلى جهد كبير لرسم ابتسامة على وجه شخص ما

3- The world is facing a lot of serious issues that affect people greatly. Getting rid of famine is one of the most important problems nowadays.

A. تواجه الدول الكثير من القضايا الخطيرة التي تؤثر على الناس بشكل كبير. فالتخلص من الحروب من أهم مشاكل هذه الأيام

B. يواجه العالم الكثير من القضايا الخطيرة التي تؤثر على الناس بشكل كبير. فالتخلص من المجاعة من أهم مشاكل هذه الأيام.

C. يواجه العالم الكثير من القضايا الجديدة التي تؤثر على الناس بشكل كبير. فالتخلص من المجاعة من أهم مشاكل هذه الأيام.

D. يواجه العالم الكثير من القضايا الخطيرة التي تؤثر على السلام بشكل كبير. فالتخلص من المجاعة من أهم مشاكل هذه الأيام.

٤- حصلت مدينة الأقصر على المركز الأول على مستوى الجمهورية كمدينة صديقة للبيئة .

a. The city of Luxor ranked first at the level of the countryside as an environment friendly governorate.

b. The country of Luxor ranked first at the level of the republic as an environmentally friend governorate.

c. The city of Luxor ranked first at the level of the republic as environmentally friendly village.

d. The city of Luxor ranked first at the level of the republic as an environmentally friendly city.

٥- الماء أصل الحياة لذا يجب أن نحافظ على كل قطرة ماء . فلا تفسد البيئة بتلويث مياه النيل

1) Life is the source of water. We should save every drop of it; so don't spoil the environment by polluting the water of the Nile.

2) Water is the origin of life. We should keep water and protect the environment by not polluting the water of Nile.

3) Water is the source of life. We must keep every drop of it; so we should protect environment by not polluting the water of the Nile.

4) Water is the origin of life. We should keep every drop of it; so don't spoil the environment by polluting the water of the Nile.

٦- إن مشكله السكان هي اخطر مشكله تواجه بلدنا في هذا الوقت

1. The population problem are the most serious problem facing our country at this time.

2. The pulsations problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.

3. The population problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.

4. The pollution problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.

## CHAPTER three

### The Big Fish Bites

The sun was high now, and the sea shone with a hard, bright light. Santiago wiped the sweat from his forehead and watched the bird circling. The old man knew that the bird was looking for fish near the surface. Suddenly, the bird dived straight down, and the water splashed. Small tuna jumped in the air, frightened by something larger below.

Santiago's heart beat faster. He studied the lines with calm eyes, but inside he was excited. He had been waiting for this moment. His fingers felt the line tremble slightly. Then, without warning, the line began to move slowly, steadily. Something powerful was taking the bait. The old man held the line carefully. He did not pull. He let the fish eat. He knew the ways of big fish. They circled, tested, and swallowed slowly. Santiago whispered, "Take it, big one. Take it well."

Then the line tightened hard, cutting deep into his hand. The fish was hooked. Santiago braced his feet and leaned back. The line stretched out into the deep water with unstoppable

force. The boat began to move slowly, pulled by the fish.

"He is strong," Santiago said aloud. "He will show me what strength is."

**The fish** did not jump. It swam steadily out into the open sea, far from all other boats.

Santiago let it run, his hands steady though the line cut into his skin. He felt the power of the great creature below, pulling him farther and farther away from land.

**For hours**, the fish swam on, and the boat followed. Santiago drank a little water and ate a piece of tuna he had caught earlier for bait. He needed strength, for this battle would not end quickly.

**As** the sun went down, the line still pulled tight, and the fish still swam deep. The old man spoke to it softly: "Fish, you are my brother. But I will not let you go. I will fight with all my heart to take you."

**Night** fell, and the stars came out. The boat moved quietly through the dark water. Santiago felt the line burning into his hands, but he held firm. His back ached, his arms trembled, but he would not surrender.

**He** remembered Joe DiMaggio playing baseball with pain in his heel. "If DiMaggio could play with pain, I can fight this fish," Santiago thought. "Pain does not matter. Only endurance matters."

**The fish** towed the boat all night. Santiago could not sleep. He tied the line across his shoulders to take some of the strain, but he never let go. He ate another piece of fish to keep his strength.

**Sometimes**, he thought of the boy. "I wish the boy were here," he whispered. "He would help me, and he would see what a great fish this is."

But Santiago was alone, and he knew this was his fight. The sea was silent except for the sound of water against the boat. The old man felt small under the wide sky, but also strong. He was part of the sea, part of the stars, part of the eternal struggle between man and nature.

**As** dawn began to break again, Santiago looked at the line. It still cut hard into the water, strong and deep. The fish had not tired. Neither had he.

**The** old man said aloud: "Now we are joined, fish, you and I. You are pulling me, and I am pulling you. May the best of us win."

### **Critical questions and their answers:**

1. How does Hemingway use the bird to symbolize guidance and hope?

كيف يستخدم همنغواي الطائر كرمز للإرشاد والأمل؟

The bird leads Santiago to the fish and gives him hope for success.

يقود الطائر سانتياغو إلى السمكة ويمنحه الأمل في النجاح.

2. Why does Santiago speak to the fish as if it were human?

لماذا يتحدث سانتياغو إلى السمكة كما لو كانت إنساناً؟

He respects the fish and sees it as a worthy opponent.



يحترم السمكة ويرى فيها خصمًا جديرًا بالاحترام.

3. What does the steady, deep swimming of the fish suggest about its nature?

ماذا يدل السباحة الهادئة والعميقة للسمكة عن طبيعتها؟

It shows that the fish is powerful, calm, and intelligent.

يدل على أن السمكة قوية وهادئة وذكية.

4. How is Santiago's endurance compared to DiMaggio's?

كيف تُقارن قدرة سانتياغو على التحمل بقدرة ديماجيو؟

Both continue fighting despite pain and never give up.

كلاهما يواصل الكفاح رغم الألم ولا يستسلم أبدًا.

5. Why does Santiago accept pain as part of the struggle?

لماذا يقبل سانتياغو الألم كجزء من الصراع؟

He believes that pain is the price of achieving great success.

يؤمن بأن الألم هو ثمن تحقيق النجاح العظيم.

6. What does the endless pull into the sea symbolize about life's challenges?

إلى ماذا يرمز السحب المستمر نحو البحر فيما يتعلق بتحديات الحياة؟

It shows that life's challenges can be long, difficult, and demanding.

يوضح أن تحديات الحياة قد تكون طويلة وصعبة وتتطلب جهدًا كبيرًا.

7. In what ways does Santiago's solitude make the battle more meaningful?

بأي طرق تجعل وحدة سانتياغو المعركة أكثر أهمية؟

It proves that he must depend only on his own courage and strength.

تثبت أنه يجب أن يعتمد فقط على شجاعته وقوته.

8. How does the sea act as both a friend and an enemy in this chapter?

كيف يعمل البحر كصديق وعدو في هذا الفصل؟

The sea gives Santiago fish, but it also tests his strength and patience.

يمنح البحر سانتياغو السمك، لكنه يختبر أيضًا قوته وصبره.

9. Why does Hemingway describe Santiago as part of the sea and the stars?

لماذا يصف همنغواي سانتياغو بأنه جزء من البحر والنجوم؟

To show that he lives in harmony with nature and belongs to it.

ليُظهر أنه يعيش في انسجام مع الطبيعة وينتمي إليها.

10. Do you think Santiago is fighting the fish, or is he fighting himself? Explain.

هل تعتقد أن سانتياغو يقاتل السمكة أم يقاتل نفسه؟ وضح.

He is fighting both the fish and his own weakness to prove his strength.

إنه يقاتل السمكة وضعفه الداخلي معًا ليثبت قوته.

11. Why does Santiago remain calm when the big fish first takes the bait?

لماذا يبقى سانتياغو هادئًا عندما تلتقط السمكة الكبيرة الطعم لأول مرة؟

He knows that patience is the key to catching a great fish.

يعرف أن الصبر هو مفتاح صيد سمكة كبيرة.

12. What does Santiago's respect for the fish tell us about his values?

ماذا يخبرنا احترام سانتياغو للسمكة عن قيمه؟

He respects strength, courage, and all living creatures.

يحترم القوة والشجاعة وجميع الكائنات الحية.

13. How does Hemingway build suspense during the battle with the fish?

كيف يبني همنغواي عنصر التشويق أثناء المعركة مع السمكة؟

He describes the slow struggle and the fish's great power step by step.

يصف الصراع البطيء وقوة السمكة الكبيرة خطوة بخطوة.

14. Why does Santiago keep encouraging himself during the struggle?

لماذا يواصل سانتياغو تشجيع نفسه أثناء الصراع؟

He wants to stay confident and strong until the battle ends.

يريد أن يبقى واثقًا وقويًا حتى تنتهي المعركة.

15. What lesson does this chapter teach about facing difficult challenges?

ما الدرس الذي يقدمه هذا الفصل عن مواجهة التحديات الصعبة؟

It teaches that courage, patience, and determination lead to success.

يعلمنا أن الشجاعة والصبر والإصرار تقود إلى النجاح.

# Test on Unit three

Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given.

1. Mohamed Salah is a "famous" player. The synonym of famous is .....  
a) unknown      b) hidden      c) popular      d) dull
2. The king has a "powerful" army. Powerful means .....  
a) weak      b) strong      c) helpless      d) careless

Choose the correct answers.

1. Before you share any news on Facebook, you must ..... the information first.  
a. deceive      b. exploit      c. verify      d. betray
2. Our teacher has a very good ..... because he always treats everyone respect.  
a. pressure      b. reputation      c. interaction      d. intention
3. Most ..... love playing video games and spending time on social media.  
a) explanations      b) teenagers      c) advisors      d) properties
4. To .....means to check and prove that something is true  
a) decide      b) make      c) break      d) verify
5. Some bad companies try to ..... poor workers.  
a) exploit      b) exploitation      c) exploited      d) exploitative
6. Scammers always ..... grand promises to trick people.  
a) make      b) copy      c) catch      d) apply
- 7.If it rains tomorrow, we ..... the picnic.  
a. cancel      b. will cancel      c. cancels      d. canceled
8. If I ..... you, I would apologize.  
a. am      b. was      c. were      d. will be
9. ....he to come , he would get the job.  
a. If      b. Had      c. Were      d. Suppose
10. If I had time, I ..... with you.  
a. went      b. will go      c. would go      d. went
11. Which of the following sentences is correctly punctuated:  
a. I love cooking my family and my pets.      b. I love cooking, my family, and my pets.  
c. I love cooking, my family and my pets.      d. I love cooking my family, and my pets.
- 12.The function of the conclusion is to .....  
a. introduce a new idea      b. repeat the first sentence  
c. summarize main points and restate the thesis      d. list all sources

. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (7 Marks)

Water is essential for all forms of life on Earth. The water cycle, also called the hydrological cycle, describes how water moves between the oceans, atmosphere, and land. It involves processes such as evaporation, condensation, precipitation, and collection. Evaporation occurs when the sun heats bodies of water such as rivers, lakes, and oceans, turning liquid water into vapor. This water vapor rises into the atmosphere and cools, forming clouds through condensation. Precipitation happens when water in clouds falls as rain, snow, or hail. Finally, the water collects in rivers, lakes, and oceans, completing the cycle. The water cycle is crucial for maintaining life on Earth. It distributes fresh water to plants, animals, and humans. Without this cycle, ecosystems would fail, and life could not survive. Human activities, however, can disrupt the water cycle. Deforestation, pollution, and climate change affect evaporation and precipitation patterns, leading to floods, droughts, and water scarcity. Scientists study the water cycle to understand weather patterns, predict natural disasters, and plan water management strategies. Protecting water resources is essential for sustainability. Everyone can contribute by reducing water waste, avoiding pollution, and supporting conservation programs.

Questions:

1. The process of water turning into vapor is called .....

- a. condensation      b. precipitation      c. evaporation      d. collection
2. Clouds are formed by. ....
- a. evaporation      b. condensation      c. precipitation      d. infiltration
3. Precipitation includes. ....
- a. soil moisture      b. fog only
- c. evaporation      d. rain, snow, and hail
4. The water cycle is important because it. ....
- a. removes all water from Earth      b. distributes fresh water to life
- c. makes oceans salty      d. increases pollution
5. Human activities like deforestation can      the water cycle.
- a. improve      b. disrupt      c. ignore      d. replace
6. The best title for the passage is."      "
- a. Oceans      b. Pollution Problems
- c. Climate Change      d. The Water Cycle
7. The underlined word "sustainability" can be replaced by. ....
- a. exhaustion      b. destruction
- c. disappearance      d. ability to maintain resources

**SC.4.A. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d: (2 Marks)**

Modern technology enables people to communicate quickly and access information easily.

- أ. تمكن التكنولوجيا الحديثة الناس من التواصل بسرعة والوصول إلى المعلومات بسهولة.
- ب. مكنت التكنولوجيا الحديثة الناس من التواصل بسرعة والوصول للمعلومات بسهولة.
- ج. تمكن التكنولوجيا الحديثة الأشخاص من الوصول بسرعة والتوصل إلى المعلومات بسهولة.
- د. تمكن التكنولوجيا الحديثة الناس من التواصل بسرعة والوصول إلى المعلومات بسهولة.

**SC.4.B. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d: (2 Marks)**

تساعد القراءة اليومية في زيادة المعرفة وتنمية مهارات التفكير النقدي لدى الطلاب بشكل فعال

- a) Daily reading helps increase knowledge and develop students critical thinking skills effectively.
- b) Daily reading help increase knowledge and develops students' critical thinking skills effectively<sup>2</sup>
- c) Daily reading helps increase knowledge and develop students' critical thinking skills effectively<sup>2</sup>
- d) Daily reading helps increase knowledge and develop student's critical thinking skills effectively.

**The Novel (1 Mark)**

**5. Answer the following questions:**

1-Why does Santiago never let go of the fishing line, even when he is in pain?

2- What does the long battle between Santiago and the fish teach us about success?

**Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:**

**(1mark)**

1- He was ill so he didn't travel to Cairo. (If)

2- If she gives me a hand, I will succeed. (Without)

**6. Write about ONE HUNDRED and EIGHTY (180) words on the following topic: (3 Marks)**

"Mobile Phone"

# Unit four

# Save and Shine

## Key vocabulary

|                    |                     |                  |                     |                     |                 |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| <b>campaign</b>    | حملة - يقوم بحملة   | <b>landfill</b>  | مكان دفن النفايات   | <b>sustainable</b>  | مستدام          |
| <b>concerns</b>    | اهتمامات - مخاوف    | <b>reduce</b>    | يقلل                | <b>swap</b>         | يبادل - يقايض   |
| <b>depletion</b>   | استهلاك - نفاذ      | <b>renewable</b> | متجدد               | <b>eco-friendly</b> | صديق للبيئة     |
| <b>reusable</b>    | قابلاعادة الاستخدام | <b>waste</b>     | مخلفات - يضع - يهدر | <b>initiative</b>   | مبادرة          |
| <b>slogan</b>      | شعار                | <b>assembly</b>  | مؤتمر - اجتماع      | <b>drip</b>         | قطرة مياة       |
| <b>impact</b>      | تأثير               | <b>leak</b>      | تسرب - يتسرب        | <b>mission</b>      | مهمة - بعثة     |
| <b>observation</b> | ملاحظات             | <b>record</b>    | يسجل                | <b>survey</b>       | استطلاع - دراسة |

### Important Vocabulary

|                      |               |                          |               |                              |                    |
|----------------------|---------------|--------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>achieve</b>       | يحقق          | <b>damage</b>            | يدمر - دمار   | <b>harm</b>                  | يؤذي - اذي         |
| <b>describe</b>      | يصف           | <b>adopt</b>             | يتبنى - يتخذ  | <b>harmful</b>               | ضار                |
| <b>discussion</b>    | مناقشة        | <b>honored</b>           | لدية الشرف    | <b>alternative</b>           | بديل               |
| <b>effect(on)</b>    | تأثير         | <b>individual</b>        | فرد - شخص     | <b>amount</b>                | كمية               |
| <b>energy</b>        | طاقة          | <b>essential</b>         | لازم - ضروري  | <b>Industrial Revolution</b> | الثورة الصناعية    |
| <b>approach</b>      | طريقة - اسلوب | <b>exchange(for)</b>     | يتبادل        | <b>issue</b>                 | قضية - موضوع       |
| <b>industry</b>      | الصناعة       | <b>balance</b>           | يوازن - توازن | <b>expand</b>                | يوسع               |
| <b>large-scale</b>   | علي نطاق واسع | <b>commitment</b>        | التزام - تعد  | <b>fashionable</b>           | مساير للموضة       |
| <b>long-term</b>     | طويل الاجل    | <b>concept</b>           | مفهوم-مصطلح   | <b>fight</b>                 | يقاتل              |
| <b>machine</b>       | الآلة         | <b>consultant</b>        | مستشار        | <b>forum</b>                 | منتدى              |
| <b>major</b>         | رئيسي         | <b>consumer</b>          | مستهلك        | <b>generation</b>            | جيل                |
| <b>manufacture</b>   | يصنع          | <b>convince</b>          | يقنع          | <b>global warning</b>        | الاحتباس الحراري   |
| <b>manufacturing</b> | تصنيع         | <b>costly</b>            | مكلف          | <b>goods</b>                 | بضائع              |
| <b>material</b>      | مادة          | <b>mention</b>           | يذكر          | <b>plant</b>                 | مصنع - نبات        |
| <b>produce</b>       | ينتج          | <b>misuse</b>            | اساءة استخدام | <b>practice</b>              | يمارس - ممارسة     |
| <b>products</b>      | منتجات        | <b>unwanted</b>          | غير مرغوب     | <b>preserve</b>              | يحفظ               |
| <b>production</b>    | انتاج         | <b>natural resources</b> | موارد طبيعية  | <b>overuse</b>               | أفراط في الاستخدام |
| <b>profit</b>        | مكسب          | <b>outcome</b>           | حصيلة - اثر   | <b>record</b>                | يسجل - سجل         |
| <b>negative</b>      | سلبي          | <b>purpose</b>           | غرض - هدف     | <b>active</b>                | نشط                |
| <b>process</b>       | عملية         | <b>avoid</b>             | يتجنب         | <b>fountain</b>              | نافورة             |
| <b>social media</b>  | وسائل التواصل | <b>purpose</b>           | هدف - غرض     | <b>prove (proof)</b>         | يثبت (دليل)        |
| <b>ignore</b>        | يتجاهل        | <b>bright</b>            | لامع          | <b>research</b>              | بحث علمي           |
| <b>inspire</b>       | يلهم          | <b>junk food</b>         | طعام جاهز     | <b>result</b>                | نتيجة              |
| <b>sink</b>          | حوض - يغرق    | <b>sources</b>           | مصادر         | <b>create</b>                | يخلق - يبتكر       |

### Definitions

|                     |                                                                          |                       |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>depletion</b>    | Reduction <b>انخفاض</b> in the number or amount of something             | استهلاك - نفاذ        |
| <b>renewable</b>    | something that can be replaced <b>طبيعيا</b> naturally <b>يستبدل</b>     | متجدد                 |
| <b>sustainable</b>  | able to continue without causing <b>يسبب</b> damage to the environment   | مستدام                |
| <b>eco-friendly</b> | not harmful to the environment                                           | صديق للبيئة           |
| <b>reusable</b>     | can be used again many times                                             | قابل لاعادة الاستخدام |
| <b>campaign</b>     | a planned series of activities <b>سلسله من الاحداث</b> to achieve a goal | حملة                  |
| <b>waste</b>        | unwanted or unused material                                              | نفاية - هدير          |
| <b>reduce</b>       | to make something smaller or less                                        | يقلل                  |

|                                 |                                                                                    |                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>swap</b>                     | to exchange one thing for another                                                  | يتبادل             |
| <b>initiative</b>               | a new action or plan intended to solve a problem.                                  | مبادرة             |
| <b>environmentally friendly</b> | designed not to harm the environment.                                              | صديق للبيئة        |
| <b>approach</b>                 | a way of doing or thinking about something.                                        | منهج - أسلوب       |
| <b>go green</b>                 | To start making choices that help protect the environment.                         | يصبح صديقاً للبيئة |
| <b>survey</b>                   | a set of questions used to collect information about people's opinion or behavior. | استطلاع رأي        |
| <b>observation</b>              | careful watching and noting of something to gain information.                      | ملاحظة             |
| <b>drip</b>                     | a small drop of liquid falling slowly.                                             | قطرة مياة          |
| <b>mission</b>                  | a special task or assignment that someone is given to do.                          | مهمة               |
| <b>assembly</b>                 | a group of people gathered together for a common purpose.                          | جمعية - طابور      |

### Expressions

|                                 |                      |                           |                      |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>cut down</b>                 | يقتل                 | <b>fight against</b>      | يحارب ضد             |
| <b>environmentally friendly</b> | صديق للبيئة          | <b>play a role in</b>     | يلعب دور في          |
| <b>refer to</b>                 | يشير الى             | <b>transform ....into</b> | يحول الى             |
| <b>go green</b>                 | ممارسات صديقة للبيئة | <b>green practices</b>    | ممارسات صديقة للبيئة |
| <b>throw away</b>               | يتخلص من             | <b>widely used</b>        | يستخدم على نطاق واسع |
| <b>start a campaign</b>         | يبدأ حملة            | <b>on social media</b>    | على وسائل التواصل    |
| <b>make changes</b>             | يجري تغييرات         | <b>free time</b>          | وقت فراغ             |
| <b>work together</b>            | يعمل معا             | <b>result from</b>        | ينتج من              |
| <b>in addition</b>              | بالإضافة الى         | <b>result of</b>          | نتيجة الى            |
| <b>do(conduct) a survey</b>     | يجري دراسة           | <b>turn on ( off)</b>     | يشغل (يطفيء) جهاز    |

### Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

| Words       | Meaning | Synonyms                  | Antonyms              | Meaning      |
|-------------|---------|---------------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| renewable   | متجدد   | sustainable – replaceable | nonrenewable = finite | غير متجدد    |
| sustainable | مستدام  | durable, continuous       | temporary- wasteful   | ضار - مدمر   |
| pollution   | تلوث    | contamination – dirtiness | cleanliness-purity    | نظافة        |
| profit      | ربح     | gain - earnings           | loss - debt           | خسارة        |
| harm        | اذي     | damage -injury            | protection- benefit   | حماية        |
| consultant  | مستشار  | advisor- expert           | amateur-beginner      | هاوي         |
| effect      | تأثير   | impact - influence        | cause-source          | سبب          |
| depletion   | نفاد    | exhaustion- influence     | increase-growth       | زيادة        |
| observe     | يلاحظ   | monitor - examine         | neglect- ignore       | يهمل         |
| active      | نشط     | energetic, lively         | lazy - inactive       | كسول         |
| collect     | يجمع    | gather                    | scatter-lose          | يبعثر - يفقد |
| leak        | يتسرب   | drip-escape               | seal-block            | يسد          |



Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. Solar energy is a **renewable** source of power. The antonym of **renewable** is ....  
a. infinite    b. permanent    c. finite    d. exhaustible    e. clean
2. We need **sustainable** solutions to protect the planet. The synonym of **sustainable** is .....  
a. environment-friendly    b. eco-friendly    c. harmful    d. weak    e. temporary
3. Factories cause a lot of **pollution** in big cities. The synonym of **pollution** is .....  
a. purity    b. cleanliness    c. contamination    d. dirtiness    e. protection
4. The company made a big **profit** this year. The antonym of **profit** is .....  
a. loss    b. deficit    c. solution    d. income    e. victory
5. Smoking causes serious **harm** to the lungs. The synonym of **harm** is .....  
a. help    b. protect    c. damage    d. injury    e. improve
6. This doctor worked as a medical **consultant**. The synonym of **consultant** is .....  
a. expert    b. adviser    c. beginner    d. helper    e. student
7. The law had a strong **effect** on the economy. The synonym of **effect** is .....  
a. cause    b. result    c. impact    d. mistake    e. question
8. Water **depletion** happens on using too much water. The antonym of **depletion** is .....  
a. increase    b. growth    c. shortage    d. reduction    e. decrease
9. Scientists **observe** the stars at night. The synonym of **observe** is .....  
a. ignore    b. watch    c. notice    d. hide    e. disturb
10. He is very **active** and loves sports. The antonym of **active** is .....  
a. lazy    b. inactive    c. fast    d. busy    e. fit
11. Workers **collect** plastic bottles for recycling. The synonym of **collect** is .....  
a. gather    b. accumulate    c. lose    d. refuse    e. throw
12. The pipe began to **leak** water everywhere. The synonym of **leak** is .....  
a. drip    b. escape    c. stop    d. block    e. close

## **Reading**

After many years since the Industrial Revolution and the misuse of technology, the large-scale production of machines and automobiles has had harmful effects on the environment. These technologies have mainly caused damage in two ways: through air and water pollution, and through the overuse of natural resources. For this reason, environmental **concerns** have become a major issue across all industries.

### **Why green ?**

Green is more than just a color. “**Going green**” means making changes in the way individuals, organizations, and societies live and work so that their actions are more environmentally friendly. Today, “**Go Green**” has become a widely used **slogan** in industry. Green manufacturing refers to producing goods in ways that do not harm the environment and that help preserve natural resources for future generations.

The concept of “green manufacturing” can be understood in two ways. First, it means producing environmentally friendly products by using renewable energy and clean technologies. Second, it refers to making the manufacturing process itself greener—reducing pollution and waste by cutting down on resource use, recycling, and reusing materials. This approach helps slow the **depletion** of natural resources and reduces the amount of waste going into **landfills**. Both manufacturers and consumers play a role in the fight against climate change, and building a sustainable future is essential.

While the process may be costly and require strong commitment, many companies have already taken the **initiative** to adopt green practices.

One negative outcome of the Industrial Revolution is global warming, which has become

a major topic of discussion in international forums and on social media. This is why many manufacturers are now working to transform their factories into eco-friendly production plants.

### **Listening**

In a bright and busy classroom, the students were discussing ways to help their community and protect the environment. Their teacher suggested forming special teams, each with a unique mission. One of the most active groups was called “The Water Team”. The Water Team’s mission was simple but important: to **survey** the school’s water sources. This included taps in the bathrooms, sinks in the science lab, and the water fountains in the playground. Their first task was to check for any drips or **leaks**. Even a small leak can waste many liters of water each day, so finding and fixing them would make a big difference.

The students also observed how water was used during the day. They noticed that some taps were left running while students washed their hands or filled bottles. They **recorded** these observations carefully in a notebook.

After two weeks of research, The Water Team presented their findings at the school **assembly**. They shared photos, charts, and ideas for saving water, such as turning off taps completely and using water bottles instead of paper cups.

Their work inspired other classes to start saving water, too. It proved that even small changes, when made by many people, can have a big **impact** on the community and the planet.

~~~~~

Reading

“Keeping our environment clean is one of the most important responsibilities for people today. Protecting nature means learning how to live without causing serious harm to the world around us. By practicing recycling, reducing waste, and reusing products, we can all play a part in building a healthier planet. One of the best ways to help is to stop using much plastic. Carrying a reusable bag and bringing your own water bottle are simple actions that make a big difference. Another useful habit is turning off lights when leaving a room and unplugging devices that are not in use. Saving energy helps reduce pollution and keeps resources from running out too quickly. In addition, we need to plant more trees and to clean public spaces regularly. Planting trees gives us fresh air and cleaning our streets and parks makes our communities safer and more beautiful. We should also encourage people to walk or cycle and avoid driving everywhere. By working together and choosing to take small actions every day, we can create a cleaner, greener, and more sustainable future.”

Exercises

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- The school started ato keep the environment clean.
a) travel b) game c) campaign d) lesson
- Garbage in a pollutes the soil and water.
a) river b) landfill c) playground d) library
- Solar power is a source of energy.
a) short b) expensive c) weak d) sustainable
- Environmental are increasing around the world.
a) celebrations b) concerns c) ideas d) solutions
- We should the use of plastic bags.

- a) grow b) break c) reduce d) forget
6. Students can books instead of buying new ones.
- a) keep b) throw c) lose d) swap
7. Water happens when we use too much water.
- a) saving b) depletion c) pollution d) sharing
8. Wind energy is a resource.
- a) expensive b) old c) renewable d) dirty
9. We should buy products to protect the earth.
- a) dangerous b) eco-friendly c) plastic d) useless
10. Glass bottles are and better than plastic ones.
- a) dirty b) old c) reusable d) small
11. Throwing in the street harms the environment.
- a) water b) waste c) fruit d) cars
12. The government started a new to plant trees.
- a) initiative b) trouble c) accident d) habit
13. The company created a short slogan to promote recycling.
- a) paragraph b) story c) slogan d) poem
14. The school held an to discuss recycling projects.
- a) lesson b) assembly c) exam d) club
15. Turn off the tap if it starts to
- a) shine b) drip c) freeze d) boil
16. Plastic pollution has a big on sea life.
- a) memory b) impact c) picture d) rule
17. Water will from the pipe if it is broken.
- a) freeze b) cook c) fly d) leak
18. Our is to protect the environment.
- a) game b) mission c) vacation d) prize
19. Scientists recorded their about animals.
- a) excuses b) observations c) games d) plans
20. The teacher asked us to the experiment results.
- a) hide b) throw c) record d) open
21. Students answered a about recycling habits.
- a) notebook b) survey c) meeting d) event

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

1. Hard work helps us our goals.
- a) miss b) forget c) lose d) achieve
2. Throwing chemicals in rivers can the water and fish.
- a) protect b) damage c) clean d) build
3. Smoking can cause serious to your health.
- a) help b) harm c) improve d) save
4. Can you the picture in detail?
- a) draw b) describe c) hide d) move
5. Many families safer habits to protect the environment.
- a) avoid b) drop c) adopt d) ignore
6. Junk food is to the body.
- a) healthy b) safe c) harmful d) useful
7. We had a long about pollution.
- a) trip b) party c) fight d) discussion
8. I am to receive this award.
- a) shy b) honored c) bored d) worried
9. Using solar energy is an to using fuel.
- a) main b) waste c) alternative d) tool
10. Pollution has a bad on the environment.
- a) reason b) effect c) cause d) shape

11. Every should help save nature.
a) group b) individual c) team d) family
12. The company reduced the of plastic it uses.
a) color b) amount c) style d) machine
13. Wind power gives us clean energy.
a) food b) water c) energy d) land
14. Clean water is essential for life.
a) extra b) essential c) cheap d) optional
15. The Revolution changed factories and machines.
a) Artificial b) Industrial c) Vocational d) Agricultural
16. This is the best to solve the problem.
a) mistake b) approach c) hobby d) game
17. We books to save money.
a) exchange b) keep c) throw d) forget
18. Overpopulation is a serious worldwide.
a) hobby b) job c) issue d) holiday
19. Cars and machines are part of modern
a) sport b) industry c) forest d) school
20. We need a between work and rest.
a) party b) balance c) break d) problem
21. Factories to produce more goods.
a) expand b) close c) stop d) shrink
22. They built a recycling project.
a) tiny b) slow c) large-scale d) simple
23. He made a strong to protect nature.
a) joke b) commitment c) plan d) gift
24. Recycling is nowadays.
a) fashionable b) dangerous c) rude d) broken
25. Planting trees brings benefits.
a) short b) late c) long-term d) fast
26. The of recycling is easy to understand.
a) game b) concept c) event d) story
27. We should..... pollution together. It is a dangerous a prolem.
a) fight b) forget c) ignore d) enjoy
28. The stopped working suddenly.
a) fruit b) toy c) machine d) fish
29. The company hired a for advice.
a) worker b) consultant c) driver d) singer
30. Students joined an online to discuss ideas.
a) park b) shop c) forum d) street
31. Water pollution is a problem today.
a) tiny b) major c) easy d) safe
32. A buys products from shops.
a) seller b) consumer c) farmer d) teacher
33. Our uses more technology than before.
a) food b) generation c) rule d) future
34. This factory can many machines.
a) steal b) manufacture c) hide d) repair
35. warming affects climate everywhere.
a) Local b) Global c) Historical d) joyful
36. uses machines to produce goods.
a) singing b) manufacturing c) reading d) cleaning
37. New cars are to buy.
a) cheap b) free c) costly d) small

38. The store sells many
 a) animals b) goods c) mountains d) plants
39. Plastic is a harmful
 a) game b) material c) animal d) place
40. Did you my name in the meeting?
 a) ignore b) remove c) mention d) hide
41. A grows in soil and needs sunlight.
 a) plant b) school c) road d) station
42. Factories many useful products.
 a) eat b) produce c) close d) cry
43. Do not water; save it.
 a) protect b) misuse c) help d) finish
44. Practice makes perfect, so we every day.
 a) sleep b) play c) practice d) ignore
45. These are made from natural materials.
 a) problems b) products c) questions d) notes
46. Plastic bags are in green cities.
 a) popular b) useful c) unwanted d) loved
47. We must our forests. They are the lung of the earth.
 a) cut b) preserve c) break d) burn
48. in factories is increasing every year.
 a) holiday b) sleep c) production d) travel
49. Water, trees and oil are natural
 a) bags b) resources c) toys d) songs
50. of water causes shortages.
 a) saving b) overuse c) cleaning d) sharing

Grammar

VERBS + (TO + INF.) OR (V.ING)

1- Verbs followed by (v.+ ing)

enjoy	يستمتع	miss	يفتقد	deny	ينكر
mind	يُمانع	prevent	يمنع	admit=confess	يعترف بـ
finish	ينهي	practise	يمارس	imagine	يتخيل / يتصور
come	يأتي	give up	يقطع عن	fancy	يتخيل
go	يذهب	put off	يؤجل	can't stand	لا يطيق
suggest=propose	يقترح	delay	يؤجل	avoid	يتجنب
consider	يفكر	detest	يشمئز	resist	يقاوم
can't stand	لا يتحمل	regret	يندم	postpone	يؤجل
involve	يشتمل	include	يتضمن	risk	يجازف
keep	يحافظ	hate	يكره	recommend	يوصي بـ
spend	يقضي	quit	يتوقف عن	appreciate	يقدر
reject	يرفض - ينبذ	anticipate	يتوقع	adore	يعشق

Examples:

- They **enjoyed watching** TV
- He **kept working** for long hours.
- She **risks climbing** mounts.
- Tom **suggested / recommends going** to the cinema
- You should **avoid going** out at night.
- I don't **mind helping** you.
- Have you **finished reading** the newspaper yet?
- I **suggest taking** some time off.
- I need to **practise speaking** English more often.
- I **can't stand listening** to this loud music.

2- Verbs followed by (to + inf.)

agree	يوافق	threaten	يُهدد	manage	يتمكن
arrange	يرتب	want	يريد	deserve	يستحق
decide	يقرر	learn	يتعلم	demand	يطلب
expect	يتوقع	offer	يعرض	refuse	يرفض
hope	يأمل	plan	يخطط	intend	ينوى
would like/ love	يود - يرغب	promise	يعد	seem	يبدو
'd prefer	يفضل	dare (to)	يجرؤ	afford	يتحمل
fail	يفشل	tend	يتولى امر	Wish	يتمنى
pretend	يتظاهر	appear	يظهر	attempt	يحاول

Examples:

- We **hope to hear** from you soon.
- My friend **offered to lend** me what I want.
- I'd **like to travel** to France someday.
- He **promised to call** me back as soon as possible.
- I **need to go** to the supermarket to buy some bread.
- We're **planning to have** a big party on my daughter's marriage.

في النفي نضع (NOT) قبل (TO)

- He **promised not to come** late again.
- They **decided not to go** out .

3- VERBS + OBJECT + (TO + INF.)

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها دائما (مصدر + to + مفعول)

expect	يتوقع	cause	يجعل	persuade	يُقنع
want	يريد	tell	يُخبر	warn	يُحذر
order	يطلب	promise	يعد	inform	يُخبر / يُبلغ
ask	يسأل / يطلب	train	يُدرّب	force	يُجبر
invite	يدعو	enable	يُمكن	motivate	يحفز

Examples:

- My teacher **advised us to study** harder.
- He didn't **allow us** enough time **to finish** the test.
- Do you think Dad will **allow you to go** to Amal's party?

- They **invited us to** have lunch with them.
- The bad weather **forced people to stay** at home all day.
- I **persuaded her to start** a new website.

- بعض من الأفعال في هذه المجموعة يأتي بعدها (مصدر + TO) بدون مفعول بدون تغيير في المعنى

- She **promised her father to do** her best. = She **promised to do** her best.

- أحيانا يؤثر حذف المفعول على المعنى عندما لا يوجد مفعول

- We **expect Sara to arrive** early. (Sara will arrive early)
- We **expect to arrive** early. (We will arrive early)

- بعض من الأفعال في هذه المجموعة يأتي بعدها (مصدر + HOW TO + مفعول)

- Ali **showed us how to reach** the station.
- We **teach students (how) to read and write**.

- عند بناء الجملة للمجهول يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال (مصدر + TO)

- The bad weather **forced people to stay** at home all day. (Active)
- People **were forced to stay** at home all day by the bad weather. (Passive)

- الأفعال (LET / MAKE) يأتي بعدهما (مصدر + مفعول)

- She **wanted to go** home, but her boss **made her stay** until the work was finished.
- My boss **let me have** the afternoon off to go to my sister's wedding.

- عند بناء الفعل (MAKE) للمجهول يأتي بعده (مصدر + TO)

- She **wanted to go** home, but She **was made to stay** until the work was finished.

- الفعل (HELP) يأتي بعده (مصدر + مفعول) أو (مصدر + TO + مفعول)

- He can **help me understand** this lesson. = - He **can help me (to) understand** this lesson.

4- VERBS FOLLOWED BY (V.+ ING) / (مصدر + TO + مفعول)

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (V.ING) أو (مصدر + TO + مفعول)

advise	ينصح	encourage	يُشجع
allow	يسمح / يأذن	recommend	يوصى بـ
permit	يسمح / يأذن	forbid	يمنع

Examples:

- They **advise walking** to town. - They **advise her to walk** to town.
- They do not **allow smoking** here. - They **do not allow us to smoke** here.
- They **encourage doing** the test. - They **encourage Ali to do** the test.
- They do not **permit smoking** here. - They do not **permit me to smoke**

5- VERBS FOLLOWED BY (V.+ ING) / (مصدر + TO) WITH NO CHANGE IN MEANING

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (V.ING) أو (مصدر + TO) بدون اختلاف تقريباً من حيث المعنى

start / begin	يبدأ	prefer	يفضل
like	يحب	hate	يكره
love	يحب	continue	يستمر

Examples:

- We **like to watch / watching** tennis.

- The baby **started to cry**. = - The baby **started crying**.
- Do you **hate working** on Saturdays? = - Do you **hate to work** on Saturdays?

6- VERBS FOLLOWED BY (V.+ ING) / (TO + مصدر) WITH A CHANGE IN MEANING

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها (V.ING) أو (مصدر + TO) مع وجود اختلاف كبير من حيث المعنى

1- stop + (to + inf.) يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء ما

- I **stopped to buy** a newspaper.
- I **stopped in order to buy** a newspaper.)

- stop + (v. + ing) يتوقف عن فعل شيء

- I **stopped buying** a newspaper. (I no longer buy one.)

2- remember + (to + inf.) يتذكر ما ينبغي عليه أن يفعله

- He **remembered to see** the man. - He **remembered and then saw** the man.

- remember + (v. + ing) يتذكر ما فعله في الماضي

- He **remembered seeing** the man. - He **saw the man and later remembered**.

3- forget + (to + inf.) ينسى أن يفعل شيء ما (أي لم يفعل الشيء)

- He **forgot to lock** the door. - He **didn't lock** it.

- forget + (v. + ing) ينسى أنه قد فعل شيء ما

- He **forgot locking** the door. - He **locked it but couldn't remember**.

4- regret + (to + inf.) يأسف أنه مضطر أن يفعل شيء ما

- We **regret to say** that we **cannot help** you at the moment.

- regret + (v. + ing) يندم على شيء فعله في الماضي

- I **regret quitting** my job. It was a stupid thing to do.

5- try + (to + inf.) يُحاول (يُبذل مجهود لكي يفعل شيء ما)

- I **tried to see** over the fence by standing on tiptoe.

- try + (v. + ing) يُجرب ليري ما سيحدث

- A: This coffee is too hot. B: **Try putting** some ice in it.

6- need + v+ ing = need + to + be + p.p) (Passive)

My car **needs (repairing = to be repaired)**

7- need + to+ infinitive = need +noun (active)

I **need a car = to buy** a car

* ملحوظات هامة:

١- يمكن أن نستخدم (مصدر + to) للتعبير عن الغرض

- I study **hard to get** good marks. - She is driving **quickly to arrive** on time.

- هنا (to = in order to = so as to) بمعنى (لكي)

- He completed all his homework **to get** a good grade

٢- هناك تعبيرات يأتي بعدها (v.ing)

It's no good	لا فائدة من	- It is no good telling him - he won't listen.
It's no use	لا فائدة من	- It's no use worrying about your exams.
feel like	يرغب في	- I feel like going to the beach.
can't help	لا يمكنه التوقف عن	- She couldn't help falling in love with him.
can't stand	لا يطيق	- I can't stand listening to this loud music.
spend his time	يقضي وقته	- He always spends his time studying hard.
waste his time	يضيع وقته	- She always wastes her time playing chess.
There's no point in	لا داعي لـ	- There's no point in buying a car if you can't drive.
be busy	مشغول في	- She was too busy doing her homework.
It's worth	جدير بـ يستحق	It's worth doing sports regularly.
What about=how about	ما رأيك في	What about going on a picnic?
It's fun	أنة ممتع	It's fun playing football.
I've difficulty in	لدية صعوبة في	I've difficulty in studying English.

٣- حروف الجر تتبع دائما بـ(اسم / ضمير / v.ing)

accuse ..sb. .. of	يتهم بـ	prevent ..sb. .. from	يمنع من
charge ..sb. .. with	يتهم بـ	protect ..from / against	يحمي من
apologize to ..sb. .. for	يعتذر عن شيء	rely on = depend on	يعتمد علي
blame ..sb. .. for	يلوم علي	search for	يبحث عن
complain about	يشكو من	succeed in	ينجح في
concentrate on	يركز علي	talk about	يتحدث عن
do without	يستغني عن	tell ..sb. .. about	يخبر شخص عن
hear about / of	يسمع عن	warn ..sb. .. about	يحذر من

- They **accused me of stealing** their money.

- I must **apologize to him for arriving** late.

- She always **complains about** my delay.

٤- يمكن أن نستخدم (to) كحرف جر و يأتي بعده (اسم / ضمير / v.ing) مع التعبيرات الآتية

look forward to	يتطلع إلي	object to	يعترض علي
be used to	معتاد علي	devote... to	يكرس لـ
be accustomed to	معتاد علي	be committed to	ملتزم بـ
take to	يعتاد علي- يتحمس لـ	due to = owing to	بسبب
contribute to	يساهم في	adjust to	يتأقلم علي
in addition to	بالإضافة الي	lead to	يؤدي الي
(be) exposed to	معرض لـ	confess to	يعترف

opposed to

معارض ل

own up to

يعترف

- I **look forward to spending** the holidays in Sharm.
- I **am used to waiting** for buses.
- My mother **devoted her life to helping** the boys.
- She didn't **take to studying** English.

٥- نستخدم (مصدر + to) بعد الصفات الدالة على المشاعر التالية

disappointed , glad , happy , pleased , relieved , sad , surprised

- I was **happy to help** them.
- She will be **delighted to see** you.

٦- نستخدم (مصدر + to) مع الجمل التي تبدأ بـ (صفة + It's)

- It was **difficult to complete** the rough draft.
- She thought it was **impossible to remember** all the rules.

٧- (مصدر + to) في المجهول تصبح (to be + pp.)

- He **hopes to be treated** well at school.

٨- (v.ing) في المجهول تصبح (being + pp.)

- I **remember being carried** to hospital after the accident.

٩- الأفعال التالية الدالة على الإدراك يأتي بعدها (v.ing) عندما ندرك جزء من الحدث

hear

يسمع

notice

يلاحظ

see

يري

watch

يشاهد

- I **heard Huda sing** a song. (This means that I heard **the whole song**.)

١٠- و يأتي بعد هذه الأفعال (مصدر) عندما ندرك كل الحدث

- I **heard Huda singing** a song. (This means that I heard part of the song.)

١١- أفعال تتبع ب المصدر بدون (to) Let – make – dare – help

- 1- Ali **let me use** his car. 2- He can't **dare take** my things.

EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR

Choose the right answers

(جمل سهلة لتثبيت القاعده بسرعة)

- 1-I like (do – done – does – doing) exercise every day.
- 2-I hate (to get – gets – got – to getting) water in my eyes.
- 3-They are going home as soon as they have finished (to work – works – working – worked).
- 4-They hope (to get – getting – of getting – get) a job they enjoy doing.
- 5-I learnt (swim – to swim – swam – to swimming) when I was three years old.
- 6-He dislikes (sleeps – slept – to sleeping – sleeping) during the day.
- 7-The children enjoyed (to play – with playing – playing – played) in the sea.
- 8-He admitted (to borrow – borrow – borrowed – borrowing) my pen without asking me.
- 9-The driver of the car (avoided – planned – offered – hoped) hitting the motorbike.
- 10-I've tried (read – with reading – to read – reads) that book, but I don't understand it.
- 11-Do you want (coming – came – comes – to come) to my party.
- 12-What do you (avoid – plan – finish – practise) to do in the summer?
- 13-She offered (helping – help – to help – helped) her mother prepare lunch.
- 14-Ali has decided (studying – studied – of studying – to study) science at university.
- 15-The boys have arranged (to play – playing – play – plays) football after school.
- 16-My friend suggested (went – go – going – to go) for a picnic on the beach.
- 17.Leila promised (to phone – phoning – to phoning -phoned) her mother .

18. She loves (**cooked - to cook - be cooked - cook**) for her family.
 19. Do you expect (**to finish - finishing - finished- finish**) your work early today?
 20. Musicians practise (**to play - playing - played- play**) their instruments for many hours a day

Choose the right answers

1. I look forward a doctor next week.
 a) be b) to being c) been d) being
2. When studying you should remember----- a break every twenty-five minutes.
 a) to take b) taking c) to take d) took
3. Suddenly everyone stopped There was silence.
 a) talk b) talking c) to talk d) talked
4. You should practise English all the time.
 a) speak b) to speak c) speaks d) speaking
5. When he told us the story, we just couldn't stop
 a) laugh b) to laugh c) laughing d) laughed
6. Tamer and I agreed seven pounds each.
 a) paying b) pay c) to pay d) was paying
7. Selim is so funny. He stopped television because he said it was rotting his brain.
 a) to watch b) is watching c) watch d) watching
8. Kareem finished his dinner at 6.30.
 a) to have eaten b) to eat c) eating d) eaten
9. Amina admitted not how to open the door.
 a) to be known b) knowing c) to know d) known
10. Hany and his sister practise tennis every day after school.
 a) playing b) to play c) played d) play
11. I regret you that Nabil will not be joining the team. I know you wanted him with us.
 a) telling b) to tell c) have told d) am telling
12. Nehad regrets her mother on her birthday. She should have done it.
 a) not phone b) not phoned c) not phoning d) not to phone
13. If I were you, I'd avoid into the city during the festival.
 a) travels b) to travel c) travelling d) of traveling
14. Before you go to London, you should practise English.
 a) speak b) speaking c) to speaking d) speaks
15. I suggest..... to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.
 a) to go b) to going c- go d) going
16. I suggest that he to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.
 a) to go b) to going c) go d) going
17. Mr El Sebaei is looking forward to a new job next year.
 a) starting b) starting c) starts d) started
18. On their way to Luxor, the tourists stopped some photos of an ancient temple.
 a) to take b) take c) taking d) to taking
19. Do you regret not the museum when you were in Cairo?
 a) to visit b) visited c) visit d) visiting
20. Munir was a soldier so he is used to ... a lot of time outdoors.
 a) spend b) spends c) spending d) spent
21. I started for the bank twenty years ago .
 a) work b) worked c) working d) to working
22. When I was a child, I used to imagine..... a pilot
 a) becoming b) to become c) becomes d) become
23. John mailed the letter and remembered it later.
 a) mailing b) to mail c) to mailing d) mails
24. I (**deny - dislike - regret - miss**) leaving early yesterday. I wish I had stayed to meet you.

- 25-I can't stand (to listen – listen – listening – to listening) to him.
- 26-He stopped (write – to write – written – writing) and put down his pen.
- 27-The thief got into the house because I forgot (closing – closed – to close – to closing) the window.
- 28-She couldn't help (to cry – cries – cry – crying) aloud the moment she saw the accident.
- 29-She deserved (win – winning – to win – won) the first prize.
- 30-He began (to playing – plays – played – playing) the guitar when the phone rang.
- 31-My brother is learning (**playing – play – plays – to play**) the oud.
- 32-I don't fancy (watch – watched – watches – watching) that film. There is a lot of violence in it.
- 33-He wanted the money (**for pay – to pay – pay – paying**) for his son's education.
- 34-His parents warned him (**not leaving – not left – not to be left – not to leave**) university without a degree.
- 35-She's training hard (**won – winning – to win – of winning**) the race.
- 36-The programme presenter asked Dr. Carter (**talk – talking – to talk – talked**) about Steinbeck's early life.
- 37-Leila asked Mona whether she could help her (**do – to doing – done – to be done**) the shopping.
- 38-I recommend (**to write – writing – written – write**) your feelings down on paper.
- 39.When the children stopped (singing-to sing-sung-sang), everyone clapped. They liked the song very much.
- 40.They expect thousands of people (visiting-visited-to visit-visits) Sapporo for the Snow Festival next year.
- 41.My brother is learning (playing-play-plays-to play) the oud.
- 42.If I were you, I'd avoid (travelling-to travel-travels-travel) into the city during the festival.
- 43.My parents suggested (go-to go-goes-going) to the theatre.
- 44.I really want (going-go-to go-went) to Hong Kong for the Chinese New Year.
- 45.Before you go to London, you should practise (speak-to speak-spoken-speaking) English.
- 46.Leila stopped (to listen-listening-listened-to listening) to the radio when she had heard a loud knock on the door.
- 47.I'll never forget (found-to find-finding-founded) that rare old coin in the garden. I was only 12 then.
- 48.She was doing exercise, then she stopped (listening-to listen-listened-listen) to the radio.
- 49.I remember (phoning-to phone-phoned-phones) my cousin in America a month ago. He told me a lot about his stay there.
- 50.Did you remember (posted-post-to post-posting) my letter? - Oh, I completely forgot.
- 51.I have always regretted (not having-not to have-have-not have) studied harder at school.
- 52.The band stopped (to play-playing-play-played) and there was silence.
- 53.She agreed (write-to write-writing-wrote) an article on classical music.
- 54.Ali shouldn't risk (to drive-drive-driving-drove) so fast.
- 55.I hate (to sit-sitting-to sitting-sit) doing nothing – I'd rather be working.
- 56.Don't forget (locking-lock-locked-to lock) the door when you leave.
- 58.I (deny-dislike-regret-miss) leaving early yesterday. I wish I had stayed to meet you.
- 59.Mona promised (she comes-to come-coming-will come) and she usually keeps her promises.
- 60.I can't stand (to listen-listen-listening-to listening) to him.
- 61.He stopped (write-to write-written-writing) and put down his pen.
- 62.I tried (stop-to stop-stopping-stopped) him, but he had already left.
- 63.The thief got into the house because I forgot (closing-closed-to close-to closing) the window.
- 64.He regretted (leaving-to leave-left-leaves) his job as he couldn't find another one.
- 65.She couldn't help (to cry-cries-cry-crying) aloud the moment she saw the accident.
- 66.She deserved (win-winning-to win-won) the first prize.
- 67.Do you enjoy (listen-to listen-listening-listened) to music?
- 68.Walid began (to play-plays-played-playing) the guitar when the phone rang.
- 69.Walid began (playing-to play-plays-played) the guitar when he was six.
- 70.Would you mind (to lend-lends-lending-lent) me this CD.
- 71.Do you regret (to go-goes-going-went) to the concert?

- 72.I've decided (learn-to learn-learning-learned) the piano.
- 73.He is considering (to go-to going-of going-going) to America this year.
- 74.He refused (answer-to answer-answering-for answering) my questions.
- 75.The salesman denied (taking-to take-takes-take) money from the lady.
- 76.I regretted (criticize-to criticize-criticizing-to criticizing) her in public.
- 77.When they came to a cafeteria, they stopped (eating-to eat-to eating-to be eaten).
- 78.I don't fancy (watch-watched-watches-watching) that film. There is a lot of violence in it.
- 79.She managed(solve – solving – solves - solved) the problem.
- 80.She doesn't feel like (to work – work – working – worked) on the computer.
81. Everyone stops (to buy – buy – buying – buys) a ticket to attend the show tonight.
- 82.He would prefer to(fly – to fly – to flying – flying) to Europe.
- 83-Musicians practise (to play – playing – being played – play) their instruments for hours a day.
- 84-She was really pleased (seen – seeing – see – to see) her old friend.
- 85-He is considering (to go – to going – of going – going) to London this year.
- 86-He refused (answer – to answer – answering – for answer) my questions.
- 87-The salesman denied (taking – to take – takes – take) money from the lady.
- 88- regretted (criticize – to criticize – criticizing – to criticizing) her in public.
- 89-When they came to a cafeteria, they stopped (eating – to eat – to eating – to be eaten).
- 90.You need to (be kept – keeping – keep- am keeping) your mind and body healthy.
- 91.You should stop to(checked – check- checking checks) social media while you're studying
- 92-He stopped (to listen - listening - listened - listen) to the radio on hearing a knock on the door.
- 93-I never forget (find - to find - finding - found) that rare old coin in the garden. I was 12 then.
- 94-She was doing exercise, then she stopped (listening - to listen - listened - listen) to the radio.
- 95-I remember (phoning - to phone - phoned - phones) my cousin in America a month ago.
- He told me a lot about his stay there.
- 96-Did you remember (posted – post - to post – posting) my letter? – Oh, I completely forgot.
- 97- I have always regretted (not having – not to have – have – not have) studied harder at school.
- 98-British Airways regret (announce – announced - to announce – announces) the cancellation of flight BA205 to Madrid.

Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

1. Let's play foobaball anf enjoy ourselves. (suggest)
2. He crossed the street not to meet the manager. (avoided)
3. The theif said that he robbed the house. (admitted)
4. The thief said he didn't kill the boy. (denied)
- 5.He likes playing football more than watching it. (prefer)
- 6.Shall I do shopping for you? (like) (suggest)
- 7.She never appeared on TV again after the scandal became known. (stopped)
8. Ali didn't lock the door when he left the house. (without)
9. I'll carry the bag for you. (offered)
10. I can't wait to tell Hany the good news. (forward) (hope)
11. He continued to disturb me although I told him to stop. (kept)
12. I wasn't there when the accident happened. (denied)
- 13.I'll give you my book. (agreed)
14. I enjoy reading a short story before going to bed. (to read)
15. My brother refused to help me with my homework. (wouldn't)
16. It's too cold today, so I don't want to go out. (will avoid)
17. I'd like to play a chess game with you. (playing)
18. I don't eat boiled eggs. (avoid)
- 19.Ali made up his mind to quit his job. (insisted.....) (decided)
- 20.Could you get me some water? (mind)
- 21.I told Samy not to forget toget the book. (reminded)
- 22.I'm very pleased that we shall travel together. (looking)
- 23.It's very dangerous to take drugs. (Taking.....)

24. The kidnappers forced the man to get into the car. (made)
 25. It took me two hours to finish the test. (spent)
 26. Ali wishes he hadn't lent him the money. (regretted)
 27. Ali felt sorry he missed the bus. (regretted)
 28. I don't think the car is good enough to repair. (worth)
 29. It's my habit to get up early. (used)
 30. It was my habit to get up early. (used)

Skills (Translatin)

يجب أن نكون شاكرين لوالدينا لما قدموا لنا من تضحيات على مدى حياتهم.

1. We should not be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.

2. We should be thank to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.

3. We should be thankful to our parents for what they have given us of sacrifices over their lives.

4. We should be thankful to our parents for what they have give us of sacrifices over their lives.

لقد أصبحت ضرورة ملحة البدء في إنشاء عاصمة جديدة بدلا من القاهرة .

1. It has became an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.

2. It have become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.

3. It has become an urgent need to begin setting up a new capital instead of Cairo.

4. It has become an urgent need to begin set up a new capital instead of Cairo.

إن كل دولة في العالم لها الحق في استخدام الطاقة الذرية للأغراض السلمية

1. Each country in the world has the right to use atomic energy for peaceful purposes.

2. Every country in the world has the right to use atomic energy for peaceful purposes.

3. Every country in the world have the right to use atomic energy for peaceful purposes.

4. Every country in the world has the right to using atomic energy for peaceful purposes.

يمكن تجنب الكثير من الامراض عن طريق اتباع العادات الغذائية السليمة.

1. It's not possible to avoid a lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.

2. It's possible to avoid a lot of diseases by fallowing healthy dietary habits.

3. It's possible to avoid lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.

4. It's possible to avoid a lot of diseases by following healthy dietary habits.

Translate into Arabi

1 The Egyptian monuments and museums attract millions of tourists from all over the world. We ought to exert more efforts to increase the number of tourists visiting Egypt nowadays.

١. لا تجذب الآثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيدا من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح هذه الايام

٢. تجذب الآثار والمتاحف المصرية بلايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيدا من الجهود لزيادة السياح هذه الايام

٣. تجذب الآثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء العالم ويجب أن نبذل مزيدا من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح هذه الايام

٤. تجذب الآثار والمتاحف المصرية ملايين من السياح من جميع أنحاء البلاد ويجب أن نبذل مزيدا من الجهود لزيادة عدد السياح تلك الايام

2- Many people say that they are too busy to go swimming or to play football. But they don't have to do special exercise to be fit. In this case, walking or even cleaning the house is just as good for them as practicing games.

١. بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغولون بالسباحة او لعب كره السله ولكن يمارسون التمارين الرياضيه تجعلهم لاثقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحالة فأن المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسه الرياضه

٢. بعض الناس يقولون انهم مشغولون بالسباحة او لعب كره القدم ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الرياضيه تجعلهم لاثقين بدنيا وفي هذه

الحاله فان المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسه الالعاب

٣. بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغولون جدا لدرجة انهم لا يمارسون السباحه او لعب كره القدم ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الرياضيه التي تجعلهم لاثقين بدنيا وفي هذه الحاله فان المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسه الرياضه

٤. بعض الناس يقولون اهم مشغولون بالسباحه او لعب كره السله ولكن لا يمارسون التمارين الالعاب تجعلهم لاثقين فنيا وفي هذه الحاله فان المشي او حتي تنظيف المنزل يعتبر مفيدا لهم كممارسه الالعاب

3. People nowadays need to understand that learning must be lifelong. This is necessary because the world of work is changing very fast. To remain employable, people must always look ahead and learn new knowledge and skills.

١. يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيره ولكي تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.

٢. يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ليس ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيره ولكي تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.

٣. يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن ثقافته يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة كبيره ولكي تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات جديدة.

٤. يحتاج الناس هذه الايام الى إدراك أن التعليم يجب أن يكون مدى الحياة وهذا ضروريا لان عالم العمل يتغير بسرعة قليله ولكي تظل موظفا يجب أن يبحث العاملون ويتعلموا معرفة ومهارات قديمه.

4. Health is a splendid blessing that completes our happiness. It's worthy saying that we can't really enjoy our life if we are unhealthy. Healthy people are always proud of what they can achieve in the fields of sports and hard work. For an unhealthy person life is no more pain and suffering.

١. إن الثروه نعمه جميله والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي الا مجرد الام ومعاناه

٢. إن الصحه نعمه جميله والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي الا مجرد الام ومعاناه

٣. إن الصحه نعمه جميله والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا لا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل السهل فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي الا مجرد الام ومعاناه

٤. إن الصحه نعمه جميله والتي تكمل سعادتنا وهي تستحق القول بأننا يمكن أن نستمتع بحياتنا إذا كنا غير أصحاء. فالأصحاء يفخرون بما يحققونه في مجال الرياضة والعمل الشاق فبالنسبة للإنسان المريض الحياة ماهي الا مجرد الام وسعاده

1. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It is often said in guidebooks that Egypt is the gift of the Nile. The Ancient Egyptians certainly must have believed this. Where else did their food come from except the rich black mud brought by the river during the annual floods? How could they transport their huge blocks of stone and their enormous statues? On the flood water of the Nile.

However, since the river is now controlled in Egypt by the High Dam at Aswan, there is no longer a flood every year as there used to be in the past. There are some people who see the High Dam as a mixed blessing. One disadvantage is that the Nile no longer brings the mineral-rich mud which used to feed the soil. By the year 2025, Egypt will suffer from shortage of water.

As the population grows, so more people will need water for drinking, washing, etc. At the same time, more water will also be needed to irrigate land in the desert to provide a suitable environment for the growing population. So what can be done? Water can be re-cycled, that is to say, some waste water can be purified and re-used. Engineers can also search for more water underground. However, the Nile will always remain the major source of water for the country. Yet, the river upon which Egypt relies begins thousands of kilometres to the south, and is shared by other countries in Africa. Both Egypt and Sudan receive water from sources in Ethiopia, Kenya, Uganda, Zaire, Rwanda and Burundi. What would happen if **these** decided they needed more of water from the Nile? The answer is co-operation. Agriculture

in Egypt depends almost entirely on irrigation, as there is hardly any rain. This is not true of some of the other Nile states, such as Uganda. Dams could therefore be built in these countries to provide water storage for Egypt at the same time, to provide a source of energy. Efforts could also be made to reduce the large loss. These are issues which will concern all the countries of the Nile in the next century in order to ensure that there is enough water for everyone.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. By the year 2025, Egypt will suffer from (lack-increase-growth-rise) of water.
2. Other Nile basin countries depend on (the Nile- wells-rain- recycled) water agriculture
3. Nile basin countries are (7 - 8- 6- 4) in number.
4. The high (wall - Dam - Fence - Building) protects Egypt from floods.
5. Nile basin countries need dams to
a) irrigate their field b) generate electricity c) transport blocks of stone d) store water
6. The underlined word " **these** " refers to(Engineers- Floods- Nile states- shortage of water)
- 7 . What could be done to improve the water supply from the Nile?
a) use it b) waste it c) recycle it d) cycle it
8. Do you think The High Dam has brought only good things?
a) Yes , of course b) definitely c) I don't know d) No , it has demerits , too
9. Explain what you think the phrase 'mixed blessing' means.
a) It has pros and cons b) It has drawbacks c) It has merits d) It has advantages
10. The Nile was important to the Ancient Egyptians as they used it to -----
a) transport goods b) grow crops c) generate electricity d) both a & b

Writing

Lesson 5

Formal Email Writing

Greeting : Dear Sir / Madam, / Dear Mr. Ali,

Language : Polite, complete - sentences, no slang

Purpose : Job application, complaint, official request

Closing : Yours sincerely, / Kind

Regards,

~~~~~

Formal Email Template

Subject: [Clear and Professional Subject]

Dear [Title + Last Name],

I am writing to [state your purpose clearly].

[Give details in full sentences. Be polite and professional.]

Thank you for your time and consideration.

Yours sincerely,

[Your Full Name]

#### Choose the right answers

1. The correct greeting in a formal email is:  
a) Hey dude                      b) Dear Sir/Madam,                      c) Hi friend                      d) Yo Ali
2. Which greeting is suitable for a formal email to Mr. Ali?  
a) Dear Mr. Ali,                      b) Hello Ali                      c) Hi Mr. A                      d) Hey boss
3. Formal email language should be:

*Mr El Sebaei Atteya*

96

01228699122

SOUVENIR

- a) Polite and complete sentences      b) Slang and emojis  
c) Broken sentences      d) Shouting in CAPS
4. Which sentence is correct for a formal email?  
a) I wanna apply      b) I am writing to apply      c) I'm applying lol      d) U should hire me
5. What is a common purpose of a formal email?  
a) Telling jokes      b) Job application      c) Gossiping      d) Sending memes
6. Another purpose of a formal email:  
a) Complaint      b) Prank      c) Fun chat      d) Greeting only
7. A suitable closing for a formal email is:  
a) Yours sincerely      b) Bye      c) Later bro      d) See ya
8. Which closing phrase is formal?  
a) Thanks dude      b) Kind Regards,      c) Catch you later      d) Miss you
9. In formal emails, avoid:  
a) Slang      b) Polite language      c) Clear details      d) Professional tone
10. A formal subject line should be:  
a) Clear and professional      b) Funny and long      c) No subject      d) Random emojis
11. The sentence "Thank you for your time and consideration" is used to show:  
a) Anger      b) Politeness      c) Boredom      d) Sarcasm
12. To start the body of a formal email, you write:  
a) I am writing to...      b) What's up?      c) Guess what...      d) Bro listen
13. A formal email must include:  
a) Greeting      b) Complaints only      c) Only emojis      d) No name
14. The phrase "Dear Ms. Hala," is used for:  
a) Formal email      b) Text messaging      c) Gaming chat      d) Social media
15. Which part explains why you are writing?  
a) Purpose      b) Greeting      c) Signature      d) Emoji line
16. A formal email signature includes:  
a) Your full name      b) Nickname only      c) Just emojis      d) A sticker
17. Appropriate tone in a formal email:  
a) Polite      b) Angry      c) Rude      d) Overly casual
18. You use "Yours sincerely" when:  
a) Writing formally      b) Messaging a friend      c) Posting online      d) Telling a story
19. Which is correct in a formal email?  
a) Plz respond      b) Please respond at your earliest convenience  
c) Respond fast      d) Reply soon dude
20. The email must start with:  
a) A greeting      b) A joke      c) A photo      d) A voice note

## **CHAPTER 4 ( The Old Man and the Sea)**

### **A Battle of Strength and Will**

The morning sun rose golden over the sea, and the sky turned from black to pale blue. Santiago had not slept. His body was stiff, his hands were cut from the line, and his back ached from leaning against the pull of the great fish. Yet his eyes were clear, and his spirit unbroken.

The fish still swam powerfully, dragging the boat farther out into the gulf. Santiago knew they were alone now, far from other fishermen, far from the coast. But he did not feel fear. Instead, he felt pride.

"No one will see this fight," he said aloud, "but I will know it, and so will the fish."

He looked at the line, stretched tight into the water. "You are my brother, fish," he whispered,

**“but I must kill you. There is no other way.”**

To rest his hands, Santiago shifted the line across his shoulders, letting the rough hemp bite into his back instead of his palms. He breathed deeply and ate another piece of tuna, chewing slowly. He knew he must save his strength. The battle was not about hours, but days.

By noon, the fish suddenly pulled harder, and Santiago braced himself. The line cut deeper into his skin, but he did not let go. His teeth clenched, sweat poured down his face. For a moment, he thought the fish might leap, but it did not. Instead, it dove deeper, dragging the skiff slowly along.

The old man admired the creature's power. **“He has not shown himself yet,”** he thought. **“He is too wise. But soon, he must come up.”**

The hours passed. The sun burned hot, and Santiago shaded his eyes. His muscles cramped, but he stretched them against the pain. He thought again of Joe DiMaggio, who played baseball with a bone spur in his heel. **“If he could play with pain, I can fight with pain,”** Santiago repeated. **“I am only an old man, but I can endure.”**

That night, the fish made a great move. It surged suddenly, pulling the boat faster than ever. Santiago almost fell, but he held on, his body trembling with the effort. His hands bled freely, but he ignored the pain.

**“You are killing me, fish,”** he said aloud, **“but you have the right. Never have I seen such a strong one. But I will not give in.”**

When the stars came out again, Santiago felt both loneliness and companionship. He was alone on the sea, but the fish was with him, bound by the line between them. He looked up at the stars and remembered the lions of his youth, playing on the beaches of Africa. That dream gave him strength.

The next morning, the fish finally rose. Santiago saw the line move up, felt the great force lifting. Then, in a sudden explosion, the marlin leapt high into the air. It was enormous—longer than the boat itself, silver in the sunlight, shining like a living sword. Water cascaded from its body as it crashed back into the sea.

Santiago's heart jumped. **“Never have I seen such a fish,”** he whispered in awe. **“Noble, strong, and full of spirit.”**

The marlin dived again, and the struggle continued. But now Santiago knew the size of his enemy. He spoke softly: **“You are the greatest fish I have ever fought. I will kill you, though it will take all my strength.”**

For two days and two nights, the battle continued. Santiago did not sleep. He ate little, only raw fish, and drank sparingly from his water bottle. His body was broken, but his will was like iron.

At times he pitied the fish. **“You are killing yourself for me,”** he said.

**“I love you, but I must take you. A man was born to work, to fight, to suffer, and to win.”**

When the third dawn came, Santiago was near exhaustion. His eyes burned, his hands were raw, his back felt as if it would break. Yet the line still held tight. The marlin swam slower now, tired but still strong.

Santiago whispered to the sea, to the fish, to himself: **“It is you or me. May God help us both.”**

### **Questions and answers:**

**1. Why had Santiago not slept at the start of the passage?**

لماذا لم ينام سانتياغو في بداية المقطع؟

**Because he was fighting the great fish and his body was stiff and injured.**

لأنه كان يقاتل السمكة الكبيرة وكان جسده متيبساً ومجرحاً.

**2. How did the sea and sky change that morning?**

كيف تغير البحر والسماء في ذلك الصباح؟

**The sun rose golden and the sky changed from black to pale blue.**

طلعت الشمس ذهبية وتحولت السماء من السواد إلى الأزرق الشاحب.

**3. What parts of Santiago's body were hurt?**

ما أجزاء جسم سانتياغو التي كانت مجروحة؟

**His hands were cut from the line and his back ached.**

يديه كانت مقطوعة من الحبل وظهره متألم.

**4. Was Santiago afraid of being far from the coast? Why or why not?**

هل خاف سانتياغو من البعد عن الساحل؟ ولماذا؟

**No — he did not feel fear; he felt pride because the fight was personal and honorable.**

لا — لم يشعر بالخوف، بل بالشرف لأن المعركة كانت شخصية وشريفة.

**5. What did Santiago call the fish, and what does this show?**

ماذا نادى سانتياغو على السمكة، وماذا يدل ذلك؟

**He called the fish his "brother," showing respect and a close bond with the creature.**

ناداها "أخي" مما يدل على احترامه ورابطته القوية مع المخلوق.

**6. Why did Santiago move the line across his shoulders?**

لماذا وضع سانتياغو الحبل على كتفيه؟

**To rest his hands and let the rough rope bite his back instead of palms.**

ليريح يديه ويجعل الحبل الخشن يعض ظهره بدلاً من راحتي يديه.

**7. How did Santiago try to save his strength?**

كيف حاول سانتياغو حفظ قوته؟

**He breathed deeply, ate slowly, and conserved energy because the battle would last days.**

تنفس بعمق، أكل ببطء، ووفر طاقته لأن المعركة ستطول لأيام.

**8. What happened at noon that made the fight harder?**

ماذا حدث عند الظهر جعل المعركة أصعب؟

**The fish pulled harder, cutting the line into his skin and dragging the skiff.**

شدت السمكة أكثر فجرحت الحبل جلده وسحبت القارب.

**9. Why did Santiago think the fish was "too wise"?**

لماذا ظن سانتياغو أن السمكة "ذكية جداً"؟

**As the fish had not yet shown itself or made predictable moves, it was careful and strong.**

لأنها لم تظهر نفسها بعد ولم تتصرف بشكل متوقع — كانت حذرة وقوية.

**10. Which baseball player did Santiago remember and why?**

بأي لاعب بيسبول تذكر سانتياغو ولماذا؟

**Joe DiMaggio, as he played despite pain, Santiago remembered him to endure pain.**

جو ديماجيو، لأنه كان يلعب رغم الألم — تذكره سانتياغو ليتحمل الألم.

**11. How did Santiago react when the fish made a sudden move at night?**

كيف تفاعل سانتياغو عندما تحركت السمكة فجأة ليلاً؟

**He almost fell but held on, body trembling; his hands bled but he ignored the pain.**

كاد يسقط لكنه تمسك، كان جسده يرتعش ويديه تنزفان لكنه تجاهل الألم.

**12. What feelings did Santiago have under the stars?**

ما المشاعر التي شعر بها سانتياغو تحت النجوم؟

**Both loneliness and companionship — he felt alone but connected to the fish.**

شعور بالوحدة والرفقة معاً — وحيد لكنه مرتبط بالسمكة.

**13. What memory gave Santiago strength?**

أي ذكرى منحتة القوة؟

**The memory of lions on African beaches from his youth.**

ذكرى الأسود على شواطئ إفريقيا في شبابه.

**14. How was the marlin described when it leapt?**

كيف وُصفت المارلين عندما قفزت؟

**Enormous, longer than the boat, silver and shining like a living sword.**

عملاقة، أطول من القارب، فضية لامعة تشبه سيفًا حيًا.

**15. What did Santiago whisper when he first saw the marlin fully?**

ماذا همس سانتياغو عندما رأى المارلين بالكامل؟

**"Never have I seen such a fish," praising its nobility, strength, and spirit.**

"لم أرَ مثل هذه السمكة من قبل"، مادحًا نبالتها وقوتها وروحها.

**16. How long did the battle continue?**

كم استمرت المعركة؟

**For two days and two nights (and into the third dawn).**

ليومين وليلتين (ومع بزوغ الفجر الثالث).

**17. What did Santiago eat and drink during the fight?**

ماذا أكل وشرب سانتياغو أثناء القتال؟

**He ate little — raw fish — and drank sparingly from his water bottle.**

أكل قليلًا — سمكًا نيئًا — وشرب قليلًا من قنينة الماء.

**18. How is Santiago's body described by the end of the third dawn?**

كيف وُصف جسد سانتياغو عند بزوغ الفجر الثالث؟

**Near exhaustion: eyes burned, hands raw, back felt like it would break.**

قريب من الإنهاك: عيون محترقة، يدان مجروحتان، ظهره كأنه سينهار.

**19. What does Santiago mean by "It is you or me"?**

ماذا يعني سانتياغو بعبارة "إما أنا أو أنت"؟

**It's a life-or-death struggle: either the man kills the fish or the fish defeats the man.**

معركة حياة أو موت: إما أن يقتل الرجل السمكة أو تهزمه السمكة.

**20. Why does Santiago sometimes pity the fish?**

لماذا يشعر سانتياغو أحيانًا بالشفقة على السمكة؟

**Because the fish is noble and suffers for him — he sees its struggle and pain.**

لأن السمكة نبيلة وتعاني من أجله — يرى صراعها وألمها.

**21. What idea about human life does Santiago express?**

ما الفكرة حول حياة الإنسان التي يعبر عنها سانتياغو؟

**A man is born to work, to fight, to suffer, and to win — life's meaning is in struggle.**

الإنسان يولد للعمل والقتال والمعاناة والانتصار — معنى الحياة في النضال.

**22. What does the line between Santiago and the fish symbolize?**

ماذا يرمز الحبل بين سانتياغو والسمكة؟

**A bond of connection — struggle, respect, and relationship between man and nature.**

رابطة اتصال — صراع واحترام وعلاقة بين الإنسان والطبيعة.

**23. How does Hemingway show the marlin's greatness?**

كيف يبين همنغواي عظمة المارلين؟

**Through vivid description: size, silver shine, leaping power, and Santiago's awe.**

بوصف حي: حجمه، لمعانه الفضي، قوة قفزاته، وإعجاب سانتياغو.

**24. Why is the fight described as not about hours but days?**

لماذا وُصفت المعركة بأنها ليست بالساعات بل بالأيام؟

**Because it's long, exhausting, and demands endurance over a long time.**

لأنها طويلة ومرهقة وتتطلب صبرًا وقدرة تحمّل طويلة الأمد.

**25. What role does pride play in Santiago's actions?**



ما دور الكبرياء في أفعال سانتياغو؟

**Pride motivates him to continue alone and to prove his skill and dignity.**

يدفعه الكبرياء للاستمرار بمفرده ولإثبات مهارته وكرامته.

**26. How does Santiago show respect for his enemy?**

كيف يظهر سانتياغو احترامه لعدوه؟

**He speaks kindly to the fish, calls it brother, admires its strength, and feels pity.**

يتحدث مع السمكة بلطف، يسميها أخًا، يُعجب بقوتها ويشعر بالشفقة تجاهها.

**27. What does the marlin's behavior tell us about it?**

ماذا يخبرنا سلوك المارلن؟

**It is powerful, wise, patient, and strong — not easily defeated.**

قوية وحكيمة وصبورة وقوية — ليست سهلة الهزيمة.

**28. How does the setting (sea, sun, stars) affect the mood?**

كيف يؤثر المكان (البحر، الشمس، النجوم) على المزاج؟

**It creates an epic, lonely, timeless mood — beautiful but harsh and challenging.**

يخلق مزاجًا ملحمةً ووحيدًا وخاليًا من الزمن — جميل لكنه قاسٍ وتحدي.

**29. What does Santiago mean when he says "You are killing me, fish, but you have the right"?**

ماذا يقصد سانتياغو بقوله "أنت تقتلني يا سمكة، لكن لك الحق"؟

**He recognizes the fairness of the fight, the fish struggles to survive and has a rightful fight.**

يعترف بعدالة المعركة — السمكة تكافح للبقاء ولها الحق في ذلك.

**30. By the end of the passage, is Santiago defeated? Explain briefly.**

هل هُزم سانتياغو بنهاية المقطع؟ اشرح بإيجاز.

**Not fully defeated — his body is broken, but his will remains strong; the struggle continues and he still aims to win.**

ليس مهزومًا تمامًا — جسده منهك لكن إرادته قوية؛ لا تزال المعركة مستمرة وهو لا يزال يهدف إلى النصر.

# Unit Five Using Technology at Schools

## Key vocabulary

|                         |                      |                         |              |                      |                |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <b>collaborate</b>      | يتعاون               | <b>hesitation</b>       | تردد         | <b>dedicate</b>      | يكرس - يخصص    |
| <b>matter</b>           | يهم - يستحق الاهتمام | <b>exchange</b>         | يتبادل       | <b>motivate</b>      | يحفز - يشجع    |
|                         |                      | <b>hesitate(to)</b>     | يتردد        | <b>motivated</b>     | محفز           |
| <b>perspective (on)</b> | وجهه نظر             | <b>exchange program</b> | برنامج تبادل | <b>expand</b>        | يتوسع - يتمدد  |
| <b>fluent</b>           | طليق - فصيح          | <b>fluency</b>          | فصاحة -طلاقة | <b>process</b>       | عملية          |
| <b>tolerance</b>        | التسامح              | <b>anxious</b>          | قلق          | <b>complicated</b>   | معقد           |
| <b>confident</b>        | واثق                 | <b>enriching</b>        | مثمر - مفيد  | <b>multicultural</b> | متعدد الثقافات |
| <b>appreciate</b>       | يقدر                 | <b>accidentally</b>     | بالصدفة      | <b>local</b>         | محلي           |

### Important Vocabulary

|                      |               |                         |                     |                                |                 |
|----------------------|---------------|-------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>ability</b>       | القدرة        | <b>imaginary</b>        | خيالي               | <b>(do) activities</b>         | أنشطة           |
| <b>improvement</b>   | تحسين         | <b>professional</b>     | محترف               | <b>avoid</b>                   | يتجنب           |
| <b>international</b> | دولي          | <b>proficiency</b>      | كفاءة               | <b>benefit</b>                 | فائدة           |
| <b>leisure time</b>  | وقت فراغ      | <b>broad</b>            | عريض                | <b>memorize</b>                | يحفظ            |
| <b>promote</b>       | يدعم - يرقى   | <b>clear</b>            | واضح                | <b>memory</b>                  | ذاكرة           |
| <b>provide</b>       | يمد ب         | <b>regular</b>          | منتظم               | <b>consistent</b>              | مستمر - متسق    |
| <b>remain</b>        | يبقى          | <b>critical</b>         | نقدي - محرج         | <b>relatives</b>               | اقارب           |
| <b>multiple</b>      | متعدد         | <b>experience</b>       | تجربة حياتية - خبرة | <b>subtitles</b>               | ترجمة الافلام   |
| <b>express</b>       | يعبر عن       | <b>native language</b>  | اللغة الام          | <b>time-consuming</b>          | مستهلك الوقت    |
| <b>foreign</b>       | اجنبي         | <b>opportunity</b>      | فرصة                | <b>worldview</b>               | نظرة عالمية     |
| <b>global</b>        | عالمي         | <b>peer</b>             | زميل                | <b>worldwide</b>               | عالمي           |
| <b>personal</b>      | شخصي          | <b>horizon</b>          | افق                 | <b>positive</b>                | ايجابي          |
| <b>abroad</b>        | الخارج        | <b>adjust (to)</b>      | يتأقلم              | <b>adventure</b>               | مغامرة          |
| <b>appreciate</b>    | يقدر          | <b>apps</b>             | تطبيقات             | <b>artificial intelligence</b> | الذكاء الصناعي  |
| <b>contraction</b>   | اختصار        | <b>dictionary</b>       | قاموس               | <b>difficulty</b>              | صعوبة           |
| <b>download</b>      | يحمل - ينزل   | <b>effective</b>        | مؤثر                | <b>embarrassed</b>             | مرتبك           |
| <b>excited</b>       | متحمس         | <b>face</b>             | يواجه               | <b>impatient</b>               | غير صبور        |
| <b>formal (in..)</b> | غير رسمي      | <b>joy</b>              | فرح                 | <b>locals</b>                  | السكان المحليون |
| <b>lose</b>          | يفقد - يخسر   | <b>meaningful</b>       | ذو معنى             | <b>nervous</b>                 | عصبي            |
| <b>officer</b>       | ضابط          | <b>playback options</b> | خيارات التشغيل      | <b>podcast</b>                 | بودكاست         |
| <b>practice</b>      | تدريب - يمارس | <b>pronunciation</b>    | نطق                 | <b>realize</b>                 | يدرك            |
| <b>software</b>      | برنامج        | <b>solve</b>            | يحل                 | <b>struggle</b>                | يكافح           |
| <b>target</b>        | هدف           | <b>master</b>           | يتقن                | <b>deal (with)</b>             | يتعامل مع       |

### Definitions

|                     |                                                         |               |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>fluency</b>      | ability to speak a language easily and accurately       | الطلاقة       |
| <b>tolerance</b>    | willingness to accept differences                       | التسامح       |
| <b>hesitation</b>   | delay or uncertainty                                    | تردد          |
| <b>perspectives</b> | points of view or ways of thinking.                     | وجهات نظر     |
| <b>expanding</b>    | making something larger, or wider in size or importance | يتوسع - يتمدد |
| <b>fluent</b>       | able to speak a language very well                      | طليق - فصيح   |

|                         |                                                                                             |              |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>exchange program</b> | temporary transfer of people between locations often involving students studying abroad.    | برنامج تبادل |
| <b>collaborate</b>      | to work together with a person or group to achieve something ,especially in science or art. | يتعاون       |
| <b>restriction</b>      | a limit or control on something                                                             | تقييد        |
| <b>dedicate</b>         | to give all your attention and effort to one particular thing                               | يخصص - يكرس  |
| <b>process</b>          | a series of actions that are done to achieve a particular result.                           | عملية        |
| <b>anxious</b>          | feeling worried, nervous, or afraid about something that might happen                       | قلق          |
| <b>complicated</b>      | not simple; difficult to understand or deal with because it has many parts                  | معقد         |
| <b>confident</b>        | feeling sure of yourself and your abilities                                                 | واثق         |
| <b>enriching</b>        | making your life better or more meaningful by giving you new knowledge, experience, or joy. | مثمر         |

### Expressions

|                                |                 |                           |                 |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>communicate with</b>        | يتصل ب          | <b>connect with</b>       | يتصل ب          |
| <b>contribute to</b>           | يساهم في        | <b>encourage to</b>       | يشجع على        |
| <b>gain a skill</b>            | يكتسب مهارة     | <b>give advice about</b>  | يعطي نصيحة بشأن |
| <b>in addition</b>             | بالإضافة إلى    | <b>in short</b>           | باختصار         |
| <b>interested in</b>           | مهتم ب          | <b>join a competition</b> | ينضم إلى        |
| <b>key to</b>                  | مفتاح ل         | <b>make friends</b>       | يصادق           |
| <b>move to</b>                 | ينتقل إلى       | <b>participate to</b>     | يشارك في        |
| <b>remain( stay) motivated</b> | يبقى متحفز      | <b>promote respect</b>    | يعزز الاحترام   |
| <b>dream of</b>                | يحلم ب          | <b>feel sure of</b>       | يتأكد من        |
| <b>fly to</b>                  | يطير إلى        | <b>kind to</b>            | لطيف ل          |
| <b>miss a flight</b>           | يفوت رحلة طيران | <b>to his surprise</b>    | لدهشة           |
| <b>turn into</b>               | يتحول ل         | <b>by the end of</b>      | قبل نهاية       |

### Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

| Words         | Meaning  | Synonyms                  | Antonyms                    | Meaning       |
|---------------|----------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| foreign       | أجنبي    | external – strange        | native – local-national     | ساكن أصلي     |
| international | دولي     | global, universal         | local- national             | محلي - قومي   |
| promote       | يعزز     | advance – boost           | hinder-discourage           | يوقف - يثبط   |
| broad         | واسع     | wide - vast               | narrow – limited            | ضيق           |
| regularly     | بانتظام  | routinely -systematically | irregularly- uncommonly     | يغير انتظام   |
| improvement   | تحسين    | development-enhancement   | deterioration-decline       | تدهور         |
| accidentally  | بالصدفة  | unintentionally           | intentionally- deliberately | بشكل متعمد    |
| difficulty    | صعوبة    | hardship- complication    | ease- simplicity            | سهولة - بساطة |
| effective     | مؤثر     | efficient                 | ineffective                 | غير مؤثر      |
| impatient     | غير صبور | restless, hasty           | patient - calm              | صابر          |
| joy           | سعادة    | happiness-pleasure        | sadness-sorrow              | حزن           |
| quick         | سريع     | rapid-fast                | slow                        | بطيء          |

## 1 Choose the (Two) correct answers out of the FIVE (5) options given:

1. She can speak **foreign** languages fluently. The synonym of **\*foreign\*** is .....  
a. local      b. overseas      c. international      d. national      e. native
2. The UN is an **international** organization. The synonym of **\*international\*** is .....  
a. global      b. worldwide      c. local      d. national      e. private
3. The school tries to **promote** good manners among students. The synonym of **\*promote\*** is .....  
a. encourage      b. support      c. stop      d. hurt      e. limit
4. Reading books gives you a **broad** knowledge. The synonym of **\*broad\*** is .....  
a. narrow      b. wide      c. thin      d. extensive      e. tiny
5. He practices English **regularly** to improve. The synonym of **\*regularly\*** is .....  
a. rarely      b. often      c. slowly      d. sometimes      e. frequently
6. There was a big **improvement** in her writing skills. The synonym of **\*improvement\*** is ...  
a. progress      b. development      c. failure      d. mistake      e. trouble
7. He accidentally dropped his phone. The synonym of **\*accidentally\*** is .....  
a. by mistake      b. unintentionally      c. carefully      d. slowly      e. on purpose
8. She faced **difficulty** in solving the problem. The antonym of **\*difficulty\*** is .....  
a. trouble      b. challenge      c. ease      d. simplicity      e. worry
9. This medicine is very **effective** for headaches. The synonym of **\*effective\*** is .....  
a. weak      b. useful      c. powerful      d. slow      e. harmful
10. He felt **impatient** while waiting in line. The antonym of **\*impatient\*** is .....  
a. patient      b. relaxed      c. calm      d. angry      e. annoyed
11. The children were full of **joy** at the festival. The synonym of **\*joy\*** is .....  
a. happiness      b. delight      c. sadness      d. anger      e. fear
12. She is a **quick** learner in class. The synonym of **\*quick\*** is .....  
a. fast      b. rapid      c. lazy      d. slow      e. late
13. She was **worried** about her exam results. The antonym of **\*worried\*** is .....  
a. calm      b. relaxed      c. afraid      d. stressed      e. upset

## Reading

Learning a foreign language opens the door to new cultures, ideas, and opportunities. If students learn a new language, they will be able to communicate with people from different countries, make international friends, and participate in global activities. Moreover, they will understand other cultures better, which promotes respect, **tolerance**, and a broader worldview.

If students practiced speaking regularly, they would improve their confidence, **fluency**, and ability to express themselves clearly in different situations. Schools that provide language programs encourage students to use these skills in real-life experiences, such as traveling, participating in exchange programs, joining international competitions, or using digital communication tools to connect with peers worldwide.

Some students **hesitate** to learn another language because they feel it is too difficult or time-consuming. However, if they tried consistently and remained motivated, they would gain not only language skills, but also critical thinking, problem-solving abilities, memory improvement, and new **perspectives** on the world.

In addition, if students spoke multiple languages, they would have more opportunities for higher education and careers in international companies. In short, learning a foreign

language is not just about grammar and vocabulary. It is a key to becoming a global citizen, **expanding** personal horizons, and contributing positively to a connected and multicultural world.

### **Listening**

“My name is Salma and I speak Arabic, English, and Spanish. I grew up in Cairo, but when I was 12, my family moved to Spain because of my father’s job. At first, I couldn’t understand anything at school. I felt shy, anxious, and overwhelmed. However, my teachers encouraged me to practice every day with my classmates, and slowly I improved. After a year, I could speak Spanish fluently and participate in class confidently.

Later, I returned to Egypt and studied English more seriously. Speaking three languages has completely changed my life. I am now multilingual, which allows me to work with international companies, travel easily, and communicate with people from different cultures. I believe learning Languages is not just about words. It’s about understanding people. We must respect the cultures connected to the languages we learn. In the future, I hope to study French. Who knows, maybe one day I will speak five languages.”

### **Listening**

“Learning any foreign language has become easier thanks to modern technology. In the past, students relied only on textbooks and classroom lessons. Today, digital tools provide many opportunities to practice and improve skills in fun and interactive ways. One of the most popular methods is using language learning applications. These apps offer short daily lessons, vocabulary games, and much pronunciation practice. Many of them use artificial intelligence to adjust the level of difficulty according to the learner’s progress. Some learners spend a little time every day, but they still make great progress. Another useful tool is online video and audio platforms. By watching movies, listening to songs, or following podcasts in the target language, learners can hear natural pronunciation and improve listening skills. Subtitles and playback options make it simple to understand and repeat. However, only a few students make full use of these options. Social media and messaging platforms also play a role. Learners can connect with native speakers around the world, exchange messages, and even join live video calls. This creates real communication opportunities without traveling. abroad, but some students show little interest in using these chances effectively. Finally, translation software and online dictionaries help students check meanings quickly and build confidence. When used together, these tools turn technology into a powerful partner for mastering new languages. Even if students have few resources, modern tools can still give them much support to reach success.”

### **Reading**

Ramy had always dreamed of traveling abroad. One summer, he finally flew to Liverpool, England. At first, he was excited, but soon he felt **anxious**. His biggest difficulty was that he couldn’t speak English. At the airport, he struggled to understand the officer’s questions. He only smiled and showed his passport, hoping for the best.

In the city, life became more **complicated**. When he tried to buy a bus ticket, he couldn’t explain himself. People behind him grew impatient, and he felt embarrassed. Later, at a restaurant, he wanted chickens but accidentally received fish.

That night, Ramy decided something important: he must learn English. He downloaded a language app, practiced basic phrases, and wrote down useful words. The next day, he tried saying, “One ticket, please,” and “Chicken, please.” To his surprise, people



understood him! He felt more **confident**.

As days passed, Ramy spoke more words, greeted locals, and even asked for directions. People appreciated his efforts and were kind to him. By the end of his trip, Ramy realized that learning English had turned his journey from a struggle into an **enriching** adventure.

**Choose the right answers:**

1. The students decided to ..... on the science project to finish it faster.  
a. compete                      b. collaborate                      c. argue                      d. distract
2. She showed no ..... before answering because she was confident.  
a. confidence                      b. courage                      c. hesitation                      d. silence
3. Teachers ..... a lot of time to help their students succeed.  
a. ignore                      b. dedicate                      c. waste                      d. refuse
4. It doesn't ..... what people say; believe in yourself.  
a. forget                      b. dislike                      c. matter                      d. hide
5. The two friends decided to ..... gifts during the holiday. They were happy.  
a. exchange                      b. throw                      c. hide                      d. break
6. His speech was so powerful that it helped ..... the audience.  
a. disappoint                      b. confuse                      c. motivate                      d. distract
7. Don't ..... to ask if you need help.  
a. remember                      b. laugh                      c. hesitate                      d. rush
8. She felt very ..... after hearing the inspirational story.  
a. lazy                      b. sleepy                      c. bored                      d. motivated
9. The teacher asked us to explain the story from another character's .....  
a. rule                      b. mistake                      c. perspective                      d. problem
10. Students often ..... ideas to improve their learning.  
a. summer                      b. exchange                      c. office                      d. art
11. The company plans to ..... its customer service team to increase its products.  
a. close                      b. reduce                      c. expand                      d. slow
12. She speaks English very ..... because she practices every day.  
a. slowly                      b. badly                      c. loudly                      d. fluently
13. His ..... in three languages is impressive.  
a. silence                      b. weakness                      c. fluency                      d. confusion
14. .... is important when living in a diverse community; people should show love to others  
a. Anger                      b. Tolerance                      c. Violence                      d. Terrorism
15. She feels ..... before exams. He needs support.  
a. relaxed                      b. excited                      c. anxious                      d. sleepy
16. Solving the puzzle was ....., but we did it.  
a. easy                      b. bored                      c. complicated                      d. fast
17. He is very ..... when speaking in public. People admire him.  
a. nervous                      b. unsure                      c. scared                      d. confident
18. Travelling abroad was a/an ..... experience for me. I have benefitted a lot.  
a. boring                      b. tiring                      c. enriching                      d. useless
19. Our city is becoming more ....., with people from many countries.  
a. empty                      b. local                      c. multicultural                      d. dangerous
20. I really ..... your help with my homework. You are wonderful.  
a. ignore                      b. forget                      c. appreciate                      d. doubt
21. I ..... dropped my phone on the floor. I was sad

a. purposely                      b. slowly                      c. loudly                      d. accidentally

22. She loves supporting ..... businesses in her town. She supports our products

a. foreign                      b. online                      c. local                      d. distant

**Choose the right answers:**

1. Good ..... in languages helps students learn faster.

a. weakness                      b. doubt                      c. ability                      d. mistake

2. The story is .....; it did not happen in real life.

a. imaginary                      b. true                      c. real                      d. scientific

3. Children should do many ..... to stay healthy.

a. risks                      b. calls                      c. keys                      d. activities

4. There has been a big ..... in his writing skills.

a. problem                      b. improvement                      c. failure                      d. mistake

5. She is a ..... tennis player.

a. beginner                      b. student                      c. professional                      d. amateur

6. We should ..... junk food to stay healthy. It's bad.

a. choose                      b. enjoy                      c. need                      d. avoid

7. English is a-an ..... language.

a. local                      b. international                      c. secret                      d. simple

8. His English ..... helps him get good jobs.

a. weakness                      b. anger                      c. proficiency                      d. problem

9. Reading books is a great ..... for students.

a. loss                      b. danger                      c. waste                      d. benefit

10. I use my ..... time to read stories and relax.

a. work                      b. leisure                      c. class                      d. study

11. The bridge is so ..... that lorries can cross it.

a. short                      b. thin                      c. broad                      d. weak

12. I try to ..... ten new English words every day.

a. forget                      b. ignore                      c. lose                      d. memorize

13. Schools should ..... healthy habits.

a. hide                      b. fight                      c. promote                      d. reduce

14. He gave a ..... answer to the question. The teacher was happy.

a. clear                      b. dark                      c. confusing                      d. loud

15. Exercise is good for your ..... You can remember information well.

a. sleep                      b. muscles                      c. phone                      d. memory

16. Teachers ..... students with help and support.

a. take                      b. push                      c. provide                      d. ignore

17. He eats vegetables on a ..... schedule. He eats it every day.

a. random                      b. regular                      c. late                      d. sudden

18. He has been working hard and will ..... successful.

a. fall                      b. change                      c. leave                      d. remain

19. It was a ..... moment when the power went off.

a. easy                      b. normal                      c. critical                      d. funny

20. I visited my ..... last weekend. They are my aunts living in another city.

a. friends                      b. relatives                      c. teachers                      d. neighbors

21. The test has ..... correct answers.

a. one                      b. little                      c. multiple                      d. zero

22. Travelling gives you great .....  
**a. mistake**                      **b. experience**                      **c. anger**                      **d. distance**
23. The movie had ..... so everyone could understand.  
**a. pictures**                      **b. subtitles**                      **c. songs**                      **d. ads**
24. I want to ..... my opinion freely.  
**a. hide**                      **b. worry**                      **c. express**                      **d. block**
25. Arabic is my ..... language. I was born in Egypt.  
**a. native**                      **b. foreign**                      **c. global**                      **d. siwi**
26. Solving this problem is time-.....It will take a lot of time.  
**a. running**                      **b. coming**                      **c. consuming**                      **d. getting**
27. I learn about ..... cultures. I read a lot of books about the traditions of other countries.  
**a. local**                      **b. foreign**                      **c. usual**                      **d. simple**
28. Studying abroad is a great .....  
**a. problem**                      **b. opportunity**                      **c. excuse**                      **d. failure**
29. Education plays a major role in shaping a student's .....  
**a. vocabulary**                      **b. hobby**                      **c. speed**                      **d. worldview**
30. Pollution is a-an ..... issue. All countries are interested in solving it.  
**a. global**                      **b. secret**                      **c. small**                      **d. local**
31. He talked to his ..... about the homework. They helped each other.  
**a. teacher**                      **b. stranger**                      **c. parent**                      **d. peer**
32. Technology spreads ..... very fast.  
**a. slowly**                      **b. locally**                      **c. rarely**                      **d. worldwide**
33. Your ..... goals are important. You should do your best to achieve them.  
**a. national**                      **b. personal**                      **c. strange**                      **d. shared**
34. Travelling opens your .....  
**a. horizon**                      **b. limit**                      **c. nightmare**                      **d. mind**
35. Try to stay ..... during hard times.  
**a. angry**                      **b. positive**                      **c. weak**                      **d. sad**
36. Many students study ..... to learn English.  
**a. locally**                      **b. abroad**                      **c. nearby**                      **d. alone**
37. You need time to ..... to a new culture. I think he will succeed.  
**a. escape**                      **b. start**                      **c. adjust**                      **d. fight**
38. Life in another country is a-an .....  
**a. routine**                      **b. danger**                      **c. adventure**                      **d. job**
39. I really ..... your help. You are a wonderful man.  
**a. forget**                      **b. appreciate**                      **c. ignore**                      **d. refuse**
40. I use different ..... to learn English.  
**a. letters**                      **b. phones**                      **c. apps**                      **d. pens**
41. .... intelligence is changing the world.  
**a. Thought**                      **b. Intelligence**                      **c. Paper**                      **d. Energy**
42. A ..... makes phrases shorter, like "don't".  
**a. expansion**                      **b. contraction**                      **c. spelling**                      **d. addition**
43. Use a ..... to check new words.  
**a. notebook**                      **b. dictionary**                      **c. phone**                      **d. picture**
44. I had difficulty understanding the lesson.  
**a. success**                      **b. plan**                      **c. idea**                      **d. difficulty**

45. I will ..... the file to my laptop.

a. delete

b. download

c. write

d. lock

46. The medicine was very ..... I felt relaxed.

a. weak

b. boring

c. effective

d. slow

47. I felt ..... when I made a mistake.

a. proud

b. embarrassed

c. excited

d. relaxed

## Grammar

### Countable and Uncountable Nouns

#### 1. Countable Nouns

وهي الأسماء التي تجمع وتعد ويكتب قبلها في حالة المفرد a – an – one أو this / that / the في الجمع ( some / any / a lot of / many / (a) few / a number of / the / my ) .

- My teachers encourage me and a lot of students to do our best.
- I saw an accident in the square.

إذا ذكرت في جملة ثانية هي الأسماء التي يمكن أن نضع لها s في آخرها في حالة الجمع، قد يكون للاسم معدود جمع شاذ

1- جمع عادي → a car → cars - a watch → watches - an apple → apples - a baby → babies - a wife → wives → 2- جمع شاذ يحفظ مثل :

– نساء women امرأة woman – رجال men رجل man – ظواهر phenomena ظاهرة phenomenon – أطفال children طفل Child ( sheep غزلان deer غزالة Deer – إوز geese إوزة goose – أقدام feet قدم foot – أسنان teeth سنّة tooth – ثيران oxen ثور Ox – قواعد bases قاعدة basis – أسماك fish سمكة fish – واحات oases واحة Oasis – وسائل means وسيلة means – خرفان sheep – فصائل species فصيلة species – وسائل media وسيلة medium )

3- هناك كلمات تتكون من جزأين وتعتبر دائما جمع الا اذا سبقها a pair of :

socks / shoes / shorts / trousers / glasses / pants / gloves / scissors

- My shoes are clean.
- A pair of Italian shoes is very expensive.

4- هناك كلمات جمع ليس لها مفرد وتعتبر دائما جمع:

police / clothes / people / goods / troops / arms / remains / cattle

- The police are looking for two criminals.

5- هناك كلمات تبقي كما هي في المفرد والجمع مع حذف أداة النكرة عند الجمع:

- The train is a cheap means of transport.

- Buses and trains are means of public transport.

6- هناك كلمات في شكلها المفرد تأخذ فعل مفرد ككل أو جمع كأفراد:

team / generation / couple / crew / gang / staff / navy / group / government / committee / family / class / army

- Mr Hesham's family is big.

- My family are having tea now.

#### 2. Uncountable Nouns

- أما الأسماء التي لا تعد s فهي الأسماء التي لا يمكن أن نضع لها s أو a أو an في حالات الجمع أو المفرد، ولا يمكننا وضع one أو two قبلها ومنها الاتي :

- The news you told me yesterday was depressing
- Ice melts in the sun.

-المواد الدراسية والألعاب الرياضية والأمراض المنتهية بحرف s يُستخدم معها فعل مفرد:

Athletics / billiards / gymnastics / mathematics / dominoes / statistics / physics / genetics / classics / politics / economics / measles / diabetes. ( is - has - was - goes....)

-العبارات الدالة على الكمية و المبالغ المالية والزمن و الثمن و المسافة و الوزن و درجات الحرارة تأخذ فعل مفرد:

- Ten million pounds **is** a lot of money. - Fifty litres of petrol **fills** my car.

-هناك كلمات لها معنيان احدهما يعد والاخر لا يعد:

**a means / means / a series / series / a species / species / a sheep / sheep/ a deer / deer / a youth / youth**

\* بعض الكلمات التي لا تُعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة **a/an** إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة

Ex : We **had** a nice breakfast.

- I spent **a nice time** on the beach.

- الأسماء التي لا تُعد لا نستخدم قبلها أدوات النكرة **a / an** ولا تجمع وتأخذ فعل مفرد :

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>School subjects</b> | history / chemistry / biology / geography / philosophy                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Abstract nouns</b>  | beauty / confidence / courage / honesty / peace / poverty                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Sports</b>          | football / hockey / tennis / volleyball / squash / chess                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Gases</b>           | oxygen / nitrogen / hydrogen / carbon dioxide                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Languages</b>       | English / French / Italian / Spanish / German / Arabic                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Meals</b>           | breakfast / lunch / dinner / supper                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Liquids</b>         | water / coffee/ oil / milk / soup / blood / tea / juice / petrol                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Activities</b>      | shopping / studying / writing / smoking / reading / washing                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Other nouns</b>     | meat / rice / oil / butter / macaroni / cheese / sugar / salt / bread / beef / furniture / gold / silver / iron / copper / brass / tin / cotton / silk / wool / information / news / luggage / baggage / equipment / evidence / advice / paper / tourism / fever / flu. |

| <b>Countable</b> <b>معدود</b>                                            | <b>Uncountable</b> <b>غير معدود</b>                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>a glass</b> كوب زجاج<br>Please, give me a glass of water .            | <b>glass</b> زجاج<br>This window is made of glass .         |
| <b>a paper</b> جريدة<br>I'm going to buy a paper.(= a newspaper)         | <b>paper</b> ورق<br>Paper is made of wood                   |
| <b>a time</b> مرة واحدة<br>He went to London three times                 | <b>time</b> وقت<br>Don't hurry. There's plenty of time      |
| <b>a cold</b> نزلة برد<br>I've got a bad cold.                           | <b>cold</b> البرد<br>The cold is unbearable this winter.    |
| <b>a chicken</b> دجاجة<br>I saw lots of chickens on grandfather's farm   | <b>chicken</b> لحم دجاج<br>Do you like chicken?             |
| <b>a light</b> لمبة<br>There are four lights in our classroom.           | <b>light</b> الضوء<br>The sun gives us light and heat.      |
| <b>a hair</b> شعرة<br>There are four hairs on your jacket.               | <b>hair</b> شعر<br>Her hair is long.                        |
| <b>an iron</b> مكواة<br>I bought an iron yesterday.                      | <b>iron</b> حديد<br>- Hospital beds are made of iron.       |
| <b>a coffee</b> فنجان قهوة<br>Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee) | <b>coffee</b> قهوة<br>Much coffee is harmful to your health |



|                                                                                            |                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>an orange</b> برتقالة<br>There are two oranges on the table.                            | <b>orange</b> (لون) برتقالي<br>I don't like orange. I prefer red                      |
| <b>a School</b> المدرسة (مبنى)<br>They're building a new school in the village.            | <b>School</b> الدراسة/ التعليم المدرسي<br>She drives the kids to school every morning |
| <b>A university</b> الجامعة (مبنى)<br>The government will build a new university next year | <b>university</b> التعليم الجامعي<br>After finishing university, she traveled abroad  |

**Study well:**

**a lot of – many – much – a few – few – a little – little – none- each – every – some- any**

|                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>a lot of</b>                | تستخدم (plenty of- a lot of) في الإثبات مع الكلمات التي تعد و الكلمات التي لا تعد - لاحظ إن<br>- نستخدم lots of مع الكلمات التي تعد و لا تعد<br>- Ali has got a lot of / lots of/ plenty of books.<br>I like films ,so I go to the cinema<br>- We ate a lot / plenty of cheese.<br>يمكن أن نستخدم a lot بدون اسم<br>- a lot.                                                                                   |
| <b>Many</b>                    | : تأتي قبل اسم يعد في الإثبات و النفي و الاستفهام<br>- I haven't got many friends. - Do you have many friends?<br>ملحوظة يمكن تأتي many ( في جملة خبرية مثبتة إذا سبقها ( so – as – too - a good - a great )<br>- There are too many people in the bus.<br>- He has a great many suits.<br>we say ( many years / many weeks / many days) لاحظ<br>We've lived here for many years. (not usually a lot of years) |
| <b>Much</b>                    | : تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد في النفي و الاستفهام<br>- Did you eat much cheese? - We didn't eat much cheese<br>ملحوظة يمكن أن تأتي ( much ) في جملة خبرية مثبتة إذا سبقها (so - very - as - too) much<br>- I miss you so much . - There is too much water in the bottle.<br>we use (too much / so much / as much ) in positive sentences.<br>لاحظ<br>We spent too much money.                                         |
| <b>a few<br/>=some</b>         | : تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولكن يكفي في الجملة المثبتة.<br>- I have a few (= a small number ) pounds so I can buy a shirt<br>"When was the last time you saw Clare?" 'A few days ago.' (= 3 or 4 days ago)                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Few(<br/>not<br/>many</b>   | : تأتي قبل اسم يعد وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولا يكفي في الجملة المثبتة:<br>I have few pounds so I can't buy a shirt                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>a little<br/>=some</b>      | : تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولكن تكفي في الجملة المثبتة<br>I have a little (= a small amount )sugar but it is enough to make a cup of tea.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Little<br/>Not<br/>much</b> | : تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولا يكفي في الجملة المثبتة<br>I have little sugar so I can't make a cup of tea.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

تأتي قبل اسم يعد أو اسم لا يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة وايضا (somebody/someone/something)

some

- My mother knows **some good stories**. (اسم يعد)
- I drank **some water**. (اسم لا يعد)

**There's somebody at the door. -I want something to eat.**

و في سؤالي العرض والطلب.

- Would you like **some tea**? (عرض)
- Can I have **some of these apples**? (طلب)

any

تأتي قبل اسم يعد أو اسم لا يعد في جملة استفهامية أو منفية.  
(anybody/anyone/anything)

- I **don't** want **any stamps**. (اسم يعد)
- I **didn't** drink **any milk**. (اسم لا يعد)
- There **isn't** **anybody** at the door. -I **don't** want **anything** to eat.
- He went out **without any money**.
- It's a very easy exam. Hardly **anybody fails**. = almost **nobody fails**.

تستخدم لنفي **some** مع نفي الفعل.

- I bought **some books**. - I **didn't** buy **any books**.
- She has **some money**. - She **doesn't** have **any money**.

تأتي مع الكلمات الدالة على النفي مثل :

**hardly – never – without – refuse – too ..... to**

- He **never** had **any** luck. - We **hardly** had **any** money.

تستخدم مع **If** الدالة والمعبرة عن الشك .

- If anyone **has any questions**, I'll be pleased to answer them.

لاحظ

- Let me know if you **need anything**. - I'm sorry for **any trouble I've caused**
- The police want to speak **to anyone who saw the accident**.
- You can **take any bus**. They all go to the centre .
- We forgot to lock the door. **Anybody could** have come in.

somebody/someone/anybody/anyone ( مفرد ) - they/them/their ( الضمير جمع )

**Someone** has forgotten **their umbrella**.

تلخيص مهم

كلمات تسبق الاسم الذي يعد في حالة الجمع والذي لا يعد:

|                            |                                              |                                                                          |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1- a lot of / plenty of    | كثير من (عدد – كمية (في الإثبات)             | We have <b>a lot of</b> friends.<br>We need <b>plenty of</b> milk.       |
| 2- many (more – the most)  | عدد كثير من                                  | Nada can't revise <b>many</b> poems.                                     |
| 3- much (more – the most)  | كمية كثيرة من)                               | She has <b>much</b> sugar in her tea.                                    |
| 4- few (fewer – fewest)    | عدد قليل لا يكفي                             | <b>Few</b> students are absent.                                          |
| 5- a few (fewer – fewest)  | عدد قليل يكفي                                | <b>A few</b> students are absent.                                        |
| 6- little (less / least)   | كمية لا تكفي                                 | There's <b>little</b> salt in the food.                                  |
| 7- a little (less / least) | كمية تكفي                                    | There's <b>a little</b> salt in the food.                                |
| 8- A number of + اسم جمع   | فعل جمع + اسم جمع                            | <b>A number of</b> the boys are abscent.                                 |
| 9- One of + اسم جمع        | فعل مفرد + اسم جمع                           | <b>One of</b> the boys isn't here.                                       |
| 10- V-ing + اسم جمع        | فعل مفرد + اسم جمع                           | <b>Reading books</b> is my hobby.                                        |
| 11- some                   | بعض (إثبات وسؤال العرض والطلب)<br>عدد – كمية | She <b>bought some</b> eggs / oil.<br>Can you lend me <b>some</b> money? |

|         |                                          |                                                              |
|---------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12- any | أي ( نفي – سؤال استفساري )<br>عدد – كمية | Have you got any sisters?<br>I haven't seen any birds there. |
|---------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|

- How many girls are in your class ? - There are twenty four.  
- How much coffee do you drink ? - Three cups.

**- يمكن استخدام أدوات تجزئة مع الكلمات التي لا تعد و عند الجمع تجمع أداة التجزئة فقط:**

|                        |                   |                      |               |
|------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| a piece of jewellery   | قطعة من المجوهرات | a grain of sand      | كوم من الرمال |
| a slice of meat        | شريحة من اللحم    | a loaf of bread      | رغيف عيش      |
| an item of information | مصطلح علمي        | a sheet of paper     | فرد ورق       |
| a packet of paper      | باكور ورق         | a piece of advice    | نصيحة واحدة   |
| a jar of jam           | برطمان مربي       | a bar of soap        | قطعة صابون    |
| a piece of music       | مقطوعة موسيقية    | a lump of sugar      | مكعب سكر      |
| a cup of coffee        | فنجان قهوة        | a bag of flour       | شنطة دقيق     |
| a glass of lemonade    | كوب عصير          | a tube of toothpaste | أنبوب معجون   |
| a bottle of milk       | زجاجة من الحليب   | a bar of chocolate   | قطعة شيكولاتة |

### **Choose the correct answer :**

- How many seconds ( is - are - were - would ) there in an hour?
- How ( much - many - few - little ) money do you have in your account?
- Would you like ( some - much - a - any ) cup of tea?
- One of the pages in the book ( is - are - were - have been ) torn.
- We didn't take ( some - many - much - little ) photographs yesterday.
- Ali was listening to ( a - many - one - some ) music when I arrived.
- We didn't do ( a - much - many - some ) shopping last week.
- I still have ( a little - much - one - a few ) things to do.
- I am going to buy ( some - a few - two - one ) bread from the bakery.
- If you want to know the news, you can read ( much paper - many paper - a paper - paper ).
- I want to print the documents, but my printer is out of ( papers - paper - a paper - many papers ).
- Bad news ( don't - doesn't - haven't - aren't ) make people happy.
- John is unemployed. He doesn't find ( job - profession - work - position ).
- Can you give me ( an - some - many - one ) advice?
- I don't have ( many - some - much - a lot ) luggage.
- They spend ( a lot of - many - a few - a ) money on travel.
- Athletics ( is - are - has - have ) my favourite sport.
- I need a new ( pair - couple - double - jar ) of sunglasses.
- I have ( some - a little - any - a lot ) problems. Can you help me?
- How ( much - many - few - little ) students are there in your school?
- Have you met ( a - some - one - any ) tourists in the museum?
- She has ( the - an - a - many ) French name, but in fact she's English.
- I am going away for ( some - many - any - a ) time in September.
- She doesn't drink ( some - many - any - a ) tea with her food.
- Would you like ( a - any - some - many ) sugar with your coffee?
- I have got ( few - less - fewer - little ) goods than my neighbour.
- How ( much - many - few - long ) coffees do you drink a day?
- I'm not very hungry as I've just eaten ( a little - many - little - a few ) cake.
- How ( much - many - few - long ) times do you go to the cinema?
- Magda does not like airports as there is always a lot of ( noises - noise - a noise - the noise ).
- Many people in Europe have light brown ( hairs - hair - hairy - the hairs ).
- ( The chicken - Chickens - Chicken - Some chickens ) is usually on the menu of that restaurant.
- I have ( a little - many - little - a few ) money so I can't buy anything.
- I have ( a little - few - little - a few ) friends so I can do a blog.
- There were too ( many - much - little - a lot ) cars on the roads yesterday.
- We have so many things to do but only ( a few - a little - a - fewer ) time.
- At some airports, they sometimes reduce the ( amount - number - quantity - sum ) of planes landing and taking off at night.

- 38- The news you gave me ( is – are – have – has ) not correct.
- 39- How ( many – much – long – often ) ice cubes do you want?
- 40- There isn't ( much – many – few – any ) that anyone can do about the noise of traffic.
- 41- I went to the pharmacy to buy a ( jar – cup- tube – slice ) of toothpaste.
- 42- My grandpa always gives me ( packets - jars - slices – pieces ) of advice.
- 43- How many ( tins – bottles – boxes – jars ) of vegetables do you have in your cupboard?
- 44- Can you pass me the ( bar – far – jar – tar ) of honey please.
- 45- I'm not very hungry because I've just eaten a ( cup – bottle – jar – piece ) of cake.
- 46- Don't forget to buy a ( bottle – jar – spoon – cup ) of cola.
- 47- His grandmother always drinks a ( cup – jar – bottle – packet ) of tea with her food.
- 48- Ten kilometres ( have – been – is – are ) a long way to run.
- 49- The article was written on ( the – an – a – many ) sheet of paper.
- 50- Fifty litres of oil ( is – are – were – have ) enough for my car.
- 51- Maths.....my favourite subject when I was in school.  
a- was                      b- were                      c- is                      d- are
- 52- There is plenty of meat, but there is not.....bread.  
a- Plenty                      b- many                      c- much                      d- a lot
- 53- Six people.....injured in a bus accident yesterday.  
a- are                      b- was                      c- were                      d- is
- 54- How.....butter should you use?  
a-many                      b- few                      c- much                      d- little
- 55-I take a.....of honey every morning.  
a- jar                      b- tube                      c- glass                      d- spoonful
- 56- He hasn't got.....furniture in his house.  
a- a lot of                      b- some                      c- any                      d-many
- 57- There are.....books on the shelf. They are not enough.  
a- many                      b- few                      c- a lot of                      d- any
- 58- My brother has.....experience, so he didn't get the job.  
a- a little                      b- a few                      c- little                      d- few
- 59- Are there.....biscuits left?  
a- some                      b- a                      c- any                      d- an
- 60- He hasn't got.....luggage.  
a- some                      b- much                      c- many                      d- a lot
- 61- After finishing....., he went to Oxford University.  
a- school                      b-a school                      c- schools                      d- the school
- 62- Do you have.....sugar in our tea?  
a- a lot                      b- much                      c- few                      d- many
- 63- Please can you go to the shops and buy a .....of honey.  
a piece                      b cup                      c -jar                      d plate
- 64- Can you pass me the..... of cake.  
a piece                      b cup                      c -jar                      d bottle
- 65-He looks different because he has had his ..... cut  
a-hairs                      b- some hair                      c- a hair                      d- hair
- 66-I'd like two cups of ....., please.  
a- coffees                      b- a coffee                      c- coffee                      d- much coffee
- 67-The air in the mountains ..... always so fresh.  
a- are                      b- be                      c- were                      d- is
- 68-Would you like .....sugar with your coffee?  
a- many                      b- any                      c- some                      d- a lot
- 69-I want to write a letter. Can I borrow ..... paper, please?  
a- many                      b- any                      c- some                      d- a
- 70- During the night , I prefer listening to.....music.  
a- many                      b- one                      c- some                      d- a
- 71- We must buy some milk.We hardly have.....left.  
a- many                      b- any                      c- some                      d- much
- 72-Is a thousand pounds too.....to spend on a holiday ?  
a- many                      b- a lot                      c- lot                      d- much
- 73 I tried not to spend so ..... money on the party but in vain.

- a) many                      b) some                      c) a lot of                      d) much
- 74.A: Do you have ..... juice left in the fridge?                      B: No, all of it had gone.
- a) any                      b) some                      c) many                      d) a little
- 75- I still have ..... things to do.
- a) a little                      b) much                      c) one                      d) a few
- 76- I am going to buy ..... bread from the bakery.
- a) some                      b) a few                      c) two                      d) one
- 77- If you want to know the news, you can read .....
- a) much paper                      b) many paper                      c) a paper                      d) paper
- 78- If you want to write any thing, you can use .....
- a) much paper                      b) many paper                      c) a paper                      d) some paper
79. There isn't ..... money left to buy my own clothes.
- a) many                      b) a lot of                      c) much                      d) a little
80. How..... people are there in the team?
- a ) much                      b) some                      c) number                      d) many
82. He asked me for ..... information about global warming.
- a) any                      b) many                      c) some                      d) a lot
83. He has got.....water, hasn't he?
- a) little                      b) a little                      c) few                      d) a few
- 84.He has got.....water, has he?
- a) little                      b) a little                      c) few                      d) a few
- 85- How ..... money do you have in your account?
- a) much                      b) many                      c) little                      d) a lot
- 86.The children have had ..... excitement. I think they won't sleep early.
- a. few                      b. much                      c. many                      d. enough
87. We don't have ..... time. We'll have to hurry.
- a) many                      b) some                      c) lot                      d) much
88. How ..... times have you seen that film?
- a) many                      b) much                      c) lots                      d) some
89. Didn't you bring ..... food with you? - I haven't prepared food yet.
- a)some                      b) any                      c) a                      d) many
90. Can you give me ..... advice?
- a) an                      b) some                      c) many                      d) all

**Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:**

1. Ali drank very little tea. ( no)
- 2.How many coffees did you drink ? (much)
- 3.She ate a little cheese. ( didn't)
- 4.I don't have many books in my bag. (a few)
- 5.Don't eat so much sugar. (Eat)
- 6.How much meat do you usually eat a week? (many)
7. Can you give me some paper to write the address? ( a)
8. I don't have much money left. (little)
- 9.He doesn't eat much bread. (eats)
- 10.Ali has no friends at his new school. (any)

## Lesson 5

### Informal Email

Greeting: Hi Sara, / Hello John, (Friendly, casual)

Language: contractions (I'll, can't)

Purpose: Chatting, inviting a friend, sharing news

Closing: Best wishes, / See you soon, / Love,

Subject: Friendly subject line Hi [First Name],

How are you? I just wanted to [state your purpose casually].



[Add details in a relaxed, friendly tone. Use contractions if needed.]

Talk to you soon!

[Your Name]

Identify the Style.

### Choose the correct answers:

1. A correct greeting in an informal email is:  
a) Dear Sir      b) Dear Mr. Ali      c) Hi Sara      d) Yours sincerely
2. Informal email language is usually:  
a) Casual and friendly      b) Very formal      c) Full of titles      d) All slang only
3. Which greeting suits an informal email?  
a) Hello John      b) Dear Madam      c) To Whom It May Concern      d) Respected Sir
4. Informal emails often use:  
a) Contractions      b) Legal terms      c) No emotions      d) Formal phrases
5. Example of a contraction:  
a) I will      b) I'll      c) I am      d) I do
6. Purpose of an informal email:  
a) Job application      b) Complaint      c) Chatting with a friend      d) Company report
7. A friendly closing for informal email:  
a) Yours sincerely      b) Kind regards      c) Best wishes      d) Faithfully
8. A suitable informal closing is:  
a) See you soon      b) Yours faithfully      c) Regards,      d) Respectfully
9. Informal emails are often sent to:  
a) Your manager      b) Government office      c) Friends or family      d) Bank
10. Which sentence fits informal style?  
a) I am writing to request      b) I wanna tell you something  
c) Please accept my regards      d) I wish to inform you
11. Informal subjects are usually:  
a) Friendly      b) Formal      c) Very long      d) With titles
12. Example of informal beginning:  
a) How are you?      b) I am writing to apply      c) With respect,      d) It would be appreciated
13. Which is informal?  
a) I'm really excited!      b) I am honored      c) I look forward to hearing      d) Yours sincerely
14. Informal tone should be:  
a) Friendly      b) Cold      c) Strict      d) Legal
15. This phrase suits informal email:  
a) Talk to you soon!      b) Yours faithfully      c) Dear Sir/Madam      d) I am writing regarding
16. Informal emails may include:  
a) Emojis      b) Job titles      c) Stamps      d) Business numbers
17. Who is an informal email usually addressed to?  
a) Friend      b) Judge      c) Boss      d) Company
18. Which is informal language?  
a) Can't wait to meet      b) Please accept      c) Formal request      d) To whom it may concern
19. Informal emails:  
a) Can use first names      b) Must use Mr./Mrs.      c) Avoid contractions      d) Never ask questions
20. A friendly purpose for informal email:  
a) Sharing news      b) Sending complaint      c) Writing report      d) Job request

### Skills @@ Translatin

يعكس تحسين اقتصادنا نتائج إيجابية على حياة المواطن المصري

- 1.Improving our economy reflects positive results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.
- 2.Improving our economic reflects positive results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.
- 3.Improving our economy reflects negative results on the lives of the Egyptian citizen.
- 4.Improving our economy reflects positive results on the life's of the Egyptian citizen.

يجب أن لا نقف مكتوفى اليدي ونلقى بالعبء على الحكومة وحدها فى حل المشاكل.

- 1.We should stand idly and put the burden on the government alone to solve problems.
- 2.We should stand idly and put the burden on the government lone to solve problems.
- 3.We shouldn't stand idly and put the burden on the government alone to solve problems.
- 4.We shouldn't stand ideal and put the burden on the government alone to solve problems.

تحثنا الاديان السماوية على التسامح والاخوة ونبذ العنف.

- 1.Heavenly religions urges us for tolerance, brotherhood and non-violence.
2. Heavenly religions urge us for tolerance, brotherhood and violence.
- 3.Heavenly religions urge us for tolerance, brother and non-violence.
- 4.Heavenly religions urge us for tolerance, brotherhood and non-violence.

يجب أن نرشد أستهلاكنا من المياه وإلا سوف نواجه مشكلات خطيرة فى المستقبل القريب.

- 1.We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.
- 2.We must not rationalize our consumption of water, or we will face serious problems in the near future.
3. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will not face serious problems in the near future.
4. We must rationalize our consumption of water, or we will hand serious problems in the near future.

تعد المشكلة السكانية أخطر المشاكل التى تواجه بلدنا فى الوقت الحالى

- 1.The population problem are the most serious problem facing our country at this time.
- 2.The pulsations problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.
3. The population problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.
4. The pollution problem is the most serious problem facing our country at this time.

### **Choose the correct answe:**

**1. Today tourism has become a huge business. It is a good source of national income for countries on the Mediterranean coast. Hence, we have to attract more tourists to visit Egypt all year round by building more comfortable hotels and making all tourist facilities available.**

١. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهى مصدر جيد للعمله الصعبه للدول التى تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال اليوم وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحه .
٢. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهى مصدر جيد للدخل القومى للدول التى تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحه.
٣. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهى مصدر جيد للدخل القومى للدول التى تطل على البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب المزيد من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل المشاريع الثقافيه المتاحه .
٤. لقد أصبحت السياحة اليوم عمل ضخما فهى مصدر جيد للدخل القومى للدول التى تقع فى البحر المتوسط. ومن ثم علينا ان نجذب بعض من السياح لزيارة مصر طوال العام وذلك عن طريق بناء المزيد من الفنادق وتقديم كل التسهيلات السياحيه المتاحه .

**2. All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, which means the ability of a group to work wee together, is something we cannot do without. Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.**

- ١-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعى والذى يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الاشياء يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي و التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى كل المشاريع.
- ٢-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل المجتمعي والذى يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الاشياء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.
- ٣-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعى والذى يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الاشياء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي بدون التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.
- ٤-تحتاج الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق اهدافها فالعمل الجماعى والذى يعنى قدرة الجماعة على العمل مع بعضها ما هى الاشياء لا يمكن العمل بدونه . العمل الجماعي مع التسامح ضروري للنجاح فى أى مشروع.

**3.Every year, millions of trees are cut down to make new paper. Fortunately, the trees give us the best wood for paper grows very quickly. Old paper can also be recycled.**

- ١-كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التى تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو كثيرا والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه
- ٢-كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التى تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القديم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه
- ٣-كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التى تعطينا أفضل الاخشاب تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصديره
- ٤-كل عام تقطع ملايين الشجار لصنع الورق ولحسن الحظ فإن الاشجار التى تعطينا أفضل الاثاث تنمو بسرعة كبيرة والورق القيم يمكن ايضا اعاده تصنيعه

**Read the following passage, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

What sort of food are we likely to be eating in the year 2030 ? Most people, when you ask them a question like that, either say : “There won’t be any left,” or : “Whatever it is, there won’t be much taste in it”. Of course, there are good reasons for being pessimistic about the world’s food supplies in the future.

Nevertheless, not all the experts share the general despondency. For one thing, although the world’s population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries. It is therefore argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is a world food shortage but that methods of cultivation are not sufficiently advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed all those that need it.

Moreover, in most industrial countries, one important cause of trouble is our conservative preference for meat. After all, we are ready for a situation where we feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population.

By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have been resolved. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients like soya beans. However, skeptically we may be about their claim that they can reproduce the substance, taste and colour of meat by these means, the fact is that the most common complaint about such “steaks” is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial bones, skin and fat!

1- According to the passage, using vegetables ingredients in one of the methods to overcome the shortage of **(protein – fats- vitamins- calcium)**

2- Which of the following can best summarise the last paragraph ?

- Ⓐ Soya beans can change the taste of meat
- Ⓑ Soya beans, steak and food ingredients
- Ⓒ Beans, fats and skin
- Ⓓ Soya beans as a replacement of meat

3- There won’t be food shortage in the future if the food is .....

- Ⓐ fairly distributed
- Ⓑ unfairly distributed
- Ⓒ of high quality
- Ⓓ of low quality

4- The problem of food can be solved if we .....

- Ⓐ use the internet and mass media
- Ⓑ use advanced methods of cultivation
- Ⓒ use more water from the sea
- Ⓓ purify the river water

5- According to the passage, our diet may be ..... in the future.

- Ⓐ the same
- Ⓑ difficult
- Ⓒ different
- Ⓓ traditional

6- We feed animals on grain to produce .....

- Ⓐ high quantity beef
- Ⓑ fat and food supplies
- Ⓒ skin and vegetables
- Ⓓ high quality beef

7- According to the passage, food production is growing .....

- Ⓐ as slow as
- Ⓑ as fast as
- Ⓒ faster than
- Ⓓ slower than

8- The main idea of the passage is .....

- Ⓐ The advantages of eating soya beans
- Ⓑ The cause of food shortage and its solution
- Ⓒ The distribution of food
- Ⓓ Population increasing all over the world

## **CHAPTER 5**

### **The Great Marlin Revealed**

The sun was rising again. Santiago had been fighting the fish for three long days and nights. His body was weary, his hands swollen and bleeding, but his spirit remained sharp. He knew the fish was weakening, though its strength was still greater than anything he had ever faced.

The line pulled with less power now, and Santiago felt the fish circling slowly deep below the boat. He recognized the pattern: the marlin was tired, but it would not surrender easily. It was preparing for its final struggle.

“Now it begins,” the old man whispered. He braced his feet against the wooden boards of the skiff and leaned back with all the strength left in him.

The fish circled wider and wider. Each turn brought it a little closer to the surface. Santiago worked carefully, pulling in the line inch by inch. His muscles burned, but he welcomed the pain. “Pain is not an enemy,” he thought. “It tells me I am alive.”

At last, the marlin rose. The giant fish came into view, silver and purple in the water, glowing in the sunlight. Santiago gasped at its size. It was longer than the boat, with a great sword-like bill and a powerful body. The marlin swam gracefully, a king of the sea.

“Fish,” Santiago said aloud, his voice full of respect, “you are my brother, but I must end this. Forgive me.”

The boat began its long journey home. Santiago’s arms were weak, but the wind carried him gently toward the coast. He looked at the marlin’s shining body in the water. “We fought well, fish,” he said softly. “You gave me everything you had. And I gave you everything I had. This was fair.”

The sea was calm, the sun warm. Santiago felt at peace, though he knew his work was not finished. The hardest part was yet to come: bringing his prize safely home.

As the boat sailed, Santiago dreamed of how the villagers would react. The fishermen would measure the marlin, and the boy would be proud. People would see that the old man was not finished, that he was still strong, still capable of greatness.

But Santiago also knew that victory carried danger. The smell of blood in the water would call the sharks. He looked at the horizon, his eyes hard. “They will come,” he said. “But I will fight them.”

The marlin floated beside him, silent, beautiful, and dead. The old man placed his hand gently on the fish’s side. “We are joined forever, you and I,” he whispered. “Your death gives me life, but it costs me my soul.”

Night fell once more, and Santiago, though exhausted, kept watch. He felt both proud and deeply sad. He had won the greatest battle of his life, but he sensed that the sea would test him again before he reached home.

He closed his eyes briefly, and in his half-dream, he saw the lions of his youth on the African shore, running and playing freely. They gave him strength, as they always did.

When he opened his eyes, he looked again at the marlin, shining in the moonlight. “Tomorrow, we will face what comes,” he said. “For now, we rest together.”

The boat sailed on into the darkness, carrying the old man and his mighty prize toward

an uncertain dawn.

### Questions and answers:

1. How long had Santiago been fighting the fish by this part of the story?

كم من الوقت كان سانتياغو يقاتل السمكة في هذا الجزء من القصة؟

Three long days and nights.

ثلاثة أيام وثلاث ليالٍ طويلة.

2. What was the condition of Santiago's body?

كيف كانت حالة جسد سانتياغو؟

He was weary, swollen, and bleeding.

كان متعباً ويداه منتفختان وتنزفان.

3. What remained strong despite his injuries?

His spirit.

ما الذي بقي قوياً رغم إصاباته؟  
روحه.

4. What did Santiago feel about the fish's strength now?

ماذا شعر سانتياغو بشأن قوة السمكة الآن؟

The fish was weakening but still strong.

السمكة كانت تضعف لكنها ما زالت قوية.

5. Why did Santiago recognize the fish's movement pattern?

لماذا تعرف سانتياغو على نمط حركة السمكة؟

Because the marlin was circling tiredly before the final struggle.

لأن المارلن كانت تدور بتعب استعداداً للقتال الأخير.

6. What did Santiago say when the struggle was about to begin?

ماذا قال سانتياغو عندما قاربت المواجهة على البدء؟  
"الآن يبدأ"

"Now it begins."

7. Why did Santiago welcome the pain?

لماذا رحّب سانتياغو بالألم؟

He believed pain proved he was alive.

لأنه اعتقد أن الألم يثبت أنه ما زال حياً.

8. How was the marlin described when it rose?

كيف وُصفت المارلن عندما ظهرت؟

Silver and purple, huge, glowing like a king.

فضية وأرجوانية، ضخمة، تتلألأ كملك.

9. What emotion did Santiago show toward the fish?

أي شعور أظهره سانتياغو تجاه السمكة؟  
احترام وأخوة.

Respect and brotherhood.

10. What did Santiago ask from the fish?

ماذا طلب سانتياغو من السمكة؟  
المغفرة.

Forgiveness.

11. What carried Santiago's boat toward the coast?

ما الذي حمل قارب سانتياغو نحو الساحل؟  
الريح.

The wind.

12. Why did Santiago feel the fight was fair?

لماذا شعر سانتياغو أن القتال كان عادلاً؟  
. كلاهما بذل كل قوته

Both gave all their strength.

13. Why wasn't Santiago completely relaxed?

لماذا لم يشعر سانتياغو بالراحة الكاملة؟

He knew the hardest part was bringing the fish home.

لأنه عرف أن أصعب جزء لم يأت بعد — إحضار السمكة للمنزل.

14. What did Santiago imagine the villagers doing?

ماذا تخيل سانتياغو أن أهل القرية سيفعلون؟

Measuring the marlin and being proud.

سيقيسون المارلن وسيكونون فخورين.

15. Who did Santiago think would be especially proud?

من توقع سانتياغو أن يكون فخوراً بشكل خاص؟  
الصبي.

The boy.



16. What danger did Santiago expect on the way home?

ما الخطر الذي توقعه سانتياغو في طريق العودة؟  
القروش.

**Sharks.**

17. Why would sharks come?

لماذا ستأتي القروش؟

Because of the smell of blood in the water.

بسبب رائحة الدم في الماء.

18. What did Santiago vow to do about the sharks?

ماذا تعهد سانتياغو أن يفعل بشأن القروش؟  
سيقاتلهم.

**Fight them.**

19. What did Santiago say to the dead marlin?

ماذا قال سانتياغو للمارلن الميتة؟

**"We are joined forever."**

" نحن مرتبطان إلى الأبد".

20. What personal cost did Santiago feel from killing the fish?

ما الثمن الشخصي الذي شعر سانتياغو أنه دفعه لقتل السمكة؟

**He said it cost him his soul.**

قال إنه كلفه روحه.

21. How did Santiago feel emotionally after winning?

كيف شعر سانتياغو عاطفياً بعد الفوز؟

**Proud but sad.**

فخور لكنه حزين.

22. What did Santiago believe about the sea?

ماذا اعتقد سانتياغو عن البحر؟

**It would test him again.**

أنه سيختبره مرة أخرى.

23. What memory gave Santiago strength again?

أي ذكرى أعطت سانتياغو القوة مرة أخرى؟

**The lions on the African shore.**

الأسود على شاطئ إفريقيا.

24. What did Santiago plan to face "tomorrow"?

ماذا خطط سانتياغو لمواجهة "غداً"؟  
أي تحديات ستأتي.

**Whatever challenges came.**

25. Why did Santiago let himself rest briefly?

لماذا سمح سانتياغو لنفسه بالراحة قليلاً؟

**He needed strength for what was ahead.**

لأنه يحتاج القوة لما ينتظره.

26. What did the marlin represent to Santiago?

ماذا مثلت المارلن لسانتياغو؟

**A noble opponent and part of himself.**

خصم نبيل وجزء منه.

27. What mood is created at the end of the passage?

ما المزاج الذي خلقه نهاية المقطع؟

**Calm but uncertain — peaceful yet dangerous.**

هدوء مع عدم يقين — سلام ممتزج بالخطر.

28. What does the phrase "your death gives me life" mean?

ماذا تعني عبارة "موتك يعطيني الحياة"؟

**Winning gives him honor and survival, but with emotional cost.**

الانتصار يعطيه الشرف والبقاء لكن بثمن نفسي.

29. What does Santiago's journey symbolize?

ماذا يرمز إليه سفر سانتياغو؟

**The struggle of life and survival.**

صراع الحياة والبقاء.

## Unit Six

# Job Hunting

## Key vocabulary

|                             |                 |                      |                |                     |                |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| <b>association</b>          | منظمة - جمعية   | <b>footprint</b>     | بصمة           | <b>mentor</b>       | مرشد           |
| <b>attitude</b>             | اتجاه - شعور    | <b>generic</b>       | عام            | <b>polished</b>     | لامع - جذاب    |
| <b>check-ins</b>            | اجتماعات متابعة | <b>implement</b>     | ينفذ           | <b>resume</b>       | سيرة ذاتية     |
| <b>clear-headed</b>         | صافي الذهن      | <b>impressive</b>    | مؤثر           | <b>silos</b>        | فرق منفصلة     |
| <b>common ground</b>        | ارضية مشتركة    | <b>independently</b> | بطريقة مستقلة  | <b>stakeholders</b> | مساهمون        |
| <b>department</b>           | قسم             | <b>innovative</b>    | مبدع           | <b>trends</b>       | اتجاهات - اراء |
| <b>analysis (analytics)</b> | تحليل (تحليلات) | <b>promotional</b>   | ترويجي - دعائي | <b>coordinator</b>  | منسق           |

### Lesson one and two

|                         |               |                    |               |                       |                 |
|-------------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| <b>application</b>      | طلب توظيف     | <b>highlight</b>   | يبرز - يظهر   | <b>relationship</b>   | علاقة           |
| <b>assessment</b>       | تقييم         | <b>hire</b>        | يوظف          | <b>relevant</b>       | ذات صلة         |
| <b>behaviour</b>        | سلوك          | <b>hunt</b>        | يبحث بحث      | <b>response</b>       | استجابة         |
| <b>candidate</b>        | مرشح          | <b>interview</b>   | مقابلة شخصية  | <b>regular</b>        | منتظم           |
| <b>challenging</b>      | صعب - متحد    | <b>involve</b>     | يشرك          | <b>round</b>          | جولة            |
| <b>client</b>           | عميل          | <b>keyword</b>     | كلمة افتتاحية | <b>sample</b>         | عينة - نموذج    |
| <b>conference</b>       | مؤتمر         | <b>screen</b>      | يتصفح - يتحري | <b>colleague</b>      | زميل            |
| <b>launch</b>           | يطلق - اطلاق  | <b>seek</b>        | يبحث عن       | <b>crisis</b>         | ازمة            |
| <b>maintain</b>         | يحافظ على     | <b>session</b>     | جلسة          | <b>currently</b>      | حاليا           |
| <b>modify</b>           | يعدل          | <b>specific</b>    | محدد          | <b>customize</b>      | يخصص            |
| <b>multiple</b>         | متعدد         | <b>strategy</b>    | استراتيجية    | <b>deadline</b>       | الموعد النهائي  |
| <b>networking</b>       | تواصل         | <b>strength</b>    | قوة           | <b>decade</b>         | عشر سنوات       |
| <b>position</b>         | وظيفة - منصب  | <b>submit</b>      | يرسل          | <b>employment</b>     | توظيف           |
| <b>presence</b>         | حضور          | <b>update</b>      | يحدث          | <b>event</b>          | حدث             |
| <b>professional</b>     | محترف         | <b>format</b>      | شكل - تنسيق   | <b>profile</b>        | ملف شخصي        |
| <b>weakness</b>         | ضعف           | <b>former</b>      | سابق          | <b>recommendation</b> | توصية           |
| <b>achievement</b>      | انجاز         | <b>fulfil</b>      | يلبي - يحقق   | <b>requirements</b>   | متطلبات         |
| <b>follower</b>         | تابع          | <b>salary</b>      | ماهية         | <b>assistant</b>      | مساعد           |
| <b>sales</b>            | مبيعات        | <b>channel</b>     | قناة طبيعية   | <b>illustrator</b>    | رسام            |
| <b>schedule</b>         | جدول مواعيد   | <b>collaborate</b> | يتعاون        | <b>internship</b>     | فترة تدريب      |
| <b>section</b>          | قسم           | <b>competitor</b>  | منافس         | <b>income</b>         | دخل             |
| <b>self-reflection</b>  | التأمل الذاتي | <b>content</b>     | محتوى         | <b>management</b>     | ادارة           |
| <b>separate</b>         | منفصل         | <b>customer</b>    | زبون          | <b>marketing</b>      | التسويق         |
| <b>sense of purpose</b> | احساس بالهدف  | <b>monitor</b>     | يراقب         | <b>passion</b>        | عاطفة           |
| <b>specialist</b>       | متخصص         | <b>determine</b>   | يحدد          | <b>engagement</b>     | ارتباط - اشتغال |
| <b>performance</b>      | اداء          | <b>up-to-date</b>  | حديث          | <b>feature</b>        | خاصية           |
| <b>platform</b>         | منصة - رصيف   | <b>visual</b>      | بصري          |                       |                 |

### Definitions

|                    |                                                                                                 |               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>resume</b>      | a document that lists your work experience, education, and skills, used when applying for jobs. | سيرة ذاتية    |
| <b>polished</b>    | made to look smooth, professional, or refined; something that has been improved to look better. | لامع - جذاب   |
| <b>footprint</b>   | the mark or impact something leaves behind                                                      | بصمة          |
| <b>association</b> | a group of people with a common purpose.                                                        | منظمة - جمعية |

|                      |                                                                                                                    |                 |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>generic</b>       | <b>general or plain; not special or specific.</b>                                                                  | عام             |
| <b>approach</b>      | <b>a way of dealing with something; a method or strategy</b>                                                       | اسلوب - نهج     |
| <b>attitude</b>      | <b>the way of thinking about something; how you react to people or situations</b>                                  | اتجاه - شعور    |
| <b>department</b>    | <b>a section of a company or organization that deals with a specific job.</b>                                      | قسم             |
| <b>common ground</b> | <b>shared ideas or interests that bring people together</b>                                                        | ارضية مشتركة    |
| <b>silos</b>         | <b>teams or departments that work in isolation, not sharing information with others.</b>                           | فرق منفصلة      |
| <b>impressive</b>    | <b>something that makes you feel admiration because it is very good or skillful.</b>                               | مؤثر            |
| <b>independently</b> | <b>doing something on your own, without needing help or control from others.</b>                                   | بطريقة مستقلة   |
| <b>stakeholders</b>  | <b>people or groups who care about or are affected by a company or project.</b>                                    | مساهمون         |
| <b>check-ins</b>     | <b>short meetings or updates to see how things are going.</b>                                                      | اجتماعات متابعة |
| <b>innovative</b>    | <b>using new and creative ideas to solve problems or make things better.</b>                                       | مبدع            |
| <b>implementing</b>  | <b>putting a plan, idea, or system into action</b>                                                                 | تنفيذ           |
| <b>trends</b>        | <b>current directions or changes in an industry</b>                                                                | اتجاهات - اراء  |
| <b>mentor</b>        | <b>a person who guides and supports someone less experienced.</b>                                                  | مرشد            |
| <b>expanded</b>      | <b>to make something larger or greater</b>                                                                         | يتمدد - يتوسع   |
| <b>clear-headed</b>  | <b>staying calm and thinking clearly</b>                                                                           | هاديء           |
| <b>ground</b>        | <b>starting point or basis</b>                                                                                     | يعد - يجهز      |
| <b>analysis</b>      | <b>the detailed study or examination of something to understand its nature or determine its essential features</b> | تحليل           |
| <b>coordinator</b>   | <b>a person or thing that brings separate parts together to work smoothly as a whole</b>                           | منسق            |
| <b>promotional</b>   | <b>related to advertising or promoting something to increase sales or public awareness</b>                         | ترويجي          |

### Expressions

|                                   |                           |                                   |                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>achieve goals</b>              | يحقق اهداف                | <b>apply to</b>                   | يتقدم بطلب            |
| <b>ring people together</b>       | يجمع الناس                | <b>apply for</b>                  | يتقدم لـ              |
| <b>give way to</b>                | يفسح المجال لـ            | <b>focus on</b>                   | يركز علي              |
| <b>in the long run</b>            | علي المدى البعيد          | <b>keep a positive attitude</b>   | يحافظ علي موقف ايجابي |
| <b>make contact</b>               | يقوم بالتواصل             | <b>land the right opportunity</b> | يغتني الفرصة          |
| <b>make or break your chances</b> | ينجح او يفشل فرصك         | <b>meet a tight deadline</b>      | يلتزم بموعد نهائي صعب |
| <b>specialize in</b>              | يتخصص في                  | <b>work in silos</b>              | العمل بشكل منفصل      |
| <b>career coach</b>               | مستشار مهني               | <b>career goals</b>               | اهداف مهنية           |
| <b>cross-department projects</b>  | مشاريع مشتركة بين الاقسام | <b>digital footprint</b>          | البصمة الرقمية        |
| <b>job hunter</b>                 | البحث عن عمل              | <b>industry event</b>             | فعاليات في مجال العمل |
| <b>job postings</b>               | اعلانات وظيفية            | <b>job seekers</b>                | الباحثون عن العمل     |
| <b>assist with</b>                | يساعد في                  | <b>bachelor of science</b>        | بكالوريوس علوم        |
| <b>information systems</b>        | نظم المعلومات             | <b>make a choice</b>              | اتخاذ قرار            |

## Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

| Words        | Meaning     | Synonyms                | Antonyms                  | Meaning     |
|--------------|-------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| customize    | يخصص        | personalize – modify    | unify = unite             | يوحد        |
| generic      | عام         | general, universal      | specific- unique          | محدد - فريد |
| highlight    | يبرز        | emphasize – spotlight   | downplay -minimize        | يقلل        |
| impressive   | مؤثر        | remarkable- awesome     | ordinary – dull           | عادي        |
| innovative   | مبتكر       | pioneering -creative    | traditional- conventional | تقليدي      |
| modify       | يعدل        | alter-adjust            | preserve-maintain         | يحفظ - يصون |
| polished     | لامع - جذاب | shinning - elegant      | dull - rough              | خام - باهت  |
| professional | مهني        | expert- skilled         | amateur- unskilled        | هاوي        |
| promotional  | ترويجي      | advertising - marketing | private- assumption       | خاص         |
| skilled      | ماهر        | talented, experienced   | private - secret          | خاص         |

## Synonyms & Antonyms

- You can customize your phone settings to match your needs. The synonym of **customize** is ....  
a. personalize      b. copy      c. ignore      d. tailor      e. confuse
- This is a generic product without a special brand. The antonym of **generic** is .....  
a. branded      b. specialized      c. normal      d. common      e. simple
- The teacher asked us to highlight the main points. The synonym of **highlight** is .....  
a. ignore      b. underline      c. hide      d. erase      e. emphasize
- The magician's show was impressive and exciting. The synonym of **impressive** is .....  
a. boring      b. remarkable      c. weak      d. amazing      e. ordinary
- The company made an innovative new device. The synonym of **innovative** is .....  
a. creative      b. old      c. new      d. original      e. boring
- You can modify your essay before submitting it. The synonym of **modify** is .....  
a. delete      b. change      c. alter      d. hide      e. repeat
- His presentation looked polished and well-prepared. The synonym of **polished** is .....  
a. messy      b. rough      c. refined      d. elegant      e. ugly
- She wrote a very professional report. The synonym of **professional** is .....  
a. skilled      b. amateur      c. lazy      d. expert      e. weak
- The company created a promotional video for the product. The synonym of **promotional** is .....  
a. advertising      b. marketing      c. hiding      d. rejecting      e. canceling
- She is a skilled artist who paints beautifully. The synonym of **skilled** is .....  
a. slow      b. expert      c. weak      d. untrained      e. talented

## Reading and Listening

The job market has transformed greatly over the past decade. Traditional methods of finding employment—such as reading a newspaper or walking into offices with a **resume** in hand—have largely given way to digital platforms and networking strategies.

Today's job seekers must maintain a professional online presence. This means having an updated LinkedIn profile, a **polished** resume, and sometimes even a personal website

showing their skills. Employers often screen **candidates** online before making contact, so your digital **footprint** can make or break your chances.

Many positions are filled through personal connections rather than public job postings. Attending industry events, joining professional associations, and maintaining relationships with former colleagues can open doors that traditional applications cannot.

The days of sending the same **generic** resume to multiple employers are gone. Successful job hunters modify their applications to each specific role, highlighting relevant experience and using keywords from the job description. This personalized **approach** increases the chances of getting noticed.

Modern interviews often involve multiple rounds, including phone screenings, and video interviews. Some companies even use skills-based assessments or ask candidates to complete sample projects. Being prepared for various interview formats is essential.

The job search process can be challenging. It's not uncommon for qualified candidates to apply to dozens of positions before landing the right opportunity. Keeping a positive **attitude** and learning from each experience is important for long-term success.

~~~~~

2 Read this resume and answer the questions below:

Sami Adel Digital Marketing Specialist

PROFESSIONAL SUMMARY Results-driven digital marketing specialist with 3+ years of experience managing social media campaigns and increasing online engagement. Skilled in content creation, data **analysis**, and customer relationship management. Seeking to use my skills in a challenging marketing **coordinator** position

WORK EXPERIENCE

Social Media Manager / Tech Crop Solutions / June 2021 - Present

- Increased follower engagement by 45% across all platforms
- Created and scheduled 50+ posts weekly for multiple social media channels
- Collaborated with the design team to develop visual content for campaigns • Monitored analytics and prepared monthly performance reports

Marketing Assistant / Local Business Hub / Jan 2020 - May 2021

- Supported the marketing team with campaign development and performance
- Maintained customer database and updated contact information
- Assisted with event planning and promotional activities
- Conducted market research and competitor analysis

EDUCATION

Bachelor of Science in Information Systems / Cairo University 2020

SKILLS

- Social Media Management (Facebook, Instagram, Twitter, LinkedIn)
- Content Creation and Copy Writing
- Google Analytics and Data Analysis
- Customer Relationship Management (**CRM**) software
- Adobe software such as Photoshop and Illustrator

listening

“Extract one. What would you say is your greatest strength?”

My greatest strength is teamwork. In my last role, I led a project that brought together

- a. expensive b. rare c. traditional d. generic
6. She wore a and stylish outfit.
a. dirty b. polished c. broken d. casual
7. Weekly-ins keep the team organized.
a. arguments b. check c. breaks d. surprises
8. The company will a new system next month.
a. implement b. cancel c. forget d. hide
9. I attached my to the email.
a. statue b. book c. resume d. plane
10. He stayed-headed during the emergency.
a. confused b. tired c. clear d. weak
11. The presentation was very
a. boring b. simple c. impressive d. common
12. Teams must work together, not in
a. groups b. silos c. offices d. seats
13. They found ground during the discussion.
a. fight b. lie c. common d. secret
14. She completed the task No one helped her.
a. loudly b. happily c. slowly d. independently
15. The approved the new plan.
a. neighbors b. workers c. stakeholders d. students
16. She works in the marketing
a. school b. omission c. department d. library
17. We need ideas to solve this problem.
a. old b. cheap c. innovative d. strange
18. Companies study market to understand what customers want.
a. holidays b. trends c. friends d. mistakes
19. The showed strong sales growth.
a. guess b. analysis c. game d. match
20. We will start a campaign next week.
a. secret b. promotional c. useless d. expensive
21. A organizes events smoothly.
a. guard b. coordinator c. visitor d. cook
22. Please send your job today.
a. message b. application c. gift d. story
23. Let's the key points. We need to discuss them.
a. hide b. ignore c. highlight d. repeat
24. She has a strong with her team. They support each other.
a. argument b. relationship c. fight d. silence
25. The teacher gave a-an to check progress.
a. ticket b. assessment c. toy d. note
26. They will new workers soon.
a. fire b. hire c. ignore d. move
27. Your answers must be to the topic.
a. wrong b. random c. relevant d. boring
28. Good is important at work.
a. noise b. behaviour c. anger d. delay
29. Many graduates for jobs online.
a. rest b. eat c. hunt d. travel
30. His was quick and polite.
a. silence b. response c. joke d. guess
31. The prepared well for the interview.
a. visitor b. worker c. candidate d. friend
32. She has a-an tomorrow morning. He has prepared himself well.
a. break b. interview c. holiday d. dinner

33. He attends training sessions. He wants to improve his skills.
a. random b. late c. regular d. private
34. This task is very but exciting.
a. boring b. challenging c. easy d. short
35. Good leaders their team in decisions.
a. ignore b. hide c. involve d. punish
36. Zamalik is going to play with Al Ahly in the next.....
a. level b. round c. mistake d. rule
37. The requested a new design.
a. thief b. seller c. client d. robber
38. Use this keyword to applications quickly.
a. cook b. screen c. send d. paint
39. She met her at the office. They began to work together.
a. driver b. colleague c. family d. guest
40. They will the new product next month.
a. launch b. stop c. hide d. remove
41. They candidates with strong skills.
a. avoid b. ignore c. seek d. change
42. The company faced a financial
a. success b. crisis c. joke d. party
43. We need to good communication.
a. break b. maintain c. charge d. stop
44. The training starts at 9 AM.
a. food b. session c. story d. email
45. He is working on a new project. He won't leave it.
a. never b. currently c. slowly d. rarely
46. They will the website design.
a. destroy b. modify c. paint d. mess
47. Please answer the questions.
a. foolish b. specific c. playful d. distant
48. The company can your plan.
a. send b. break c. customize d. copy
49. We had tasks today.
a. one b. multiple c. none d. slowly
50. The team created a new marketing They achieved a lot.
a. dream b. strategy c. mistake d. place
51. Finish the work before the
a. violence b. deadline c. attack d. plane
52. helps you find career opportunities.
a. Sleeping b. Reading c. Networking d. Cooking
53. Communication is a real for her.
a. weakness b. strength c. secret d. guess
54. He worked in sales for a It was from 1990 to 2000.
a. month b. day c. decade d. season
55. She applied for a in HR.
a. break b. position c. mistake d. lesson
56. Please your report tomorrow.
a. forget b. submit c. reject d. buy
57. She found after graduation.
a. holiday b. exercise c. employment d. hobby
58. Your online is important for your career.
a. silence b. presence c. uniform d. privacy
59. They will the system soon.
a. neglect b. ignore c. update d. delay
60. The company held a big yesterday.

- a. argument b. event c. rule d. document
61. He is a designer. He earns a lot of money.
a. beginner b. student c. professional d. visitor
62. He got a-an at a big company. He acquired good skills.
a. salary b. interview c. holiday d. internship
63. She completed her online today.
a. profile b. lunch c. journey d. picture
64. One he has is time management. He is lazy .
a. strength b. weakness c. plan d. skill
65. The manager now works in London.
a. new b. former c. wrong d. secret
66. The teacher gave me a strong for the scholarship program.
a. question b. recommendation c. complaint d. story
67. Her greatest was starting her own company.
a. problem b. plan c. hobby d. achievement
68. The company must customer needs.
a. ignore b. fulfil c. hide d. cancel
69. You must meet the for this job.
a. excuses b. answers c. requirements d. accidents
70. She is a social media
a. leader b. writer c. follower d. critic
71. He receives a good every month.
a. salary b. gift c. meal d. hobby
72. The manager has an He prepares his meetings.
a. competitor b. assistant c. visitor d. driver
73. She works in at the company.
a. cooking b. sales c. repair d. dancing
74. Each has its own audience.
a. road b. prize c. paper d. channel
75. The created beautiful drawings to bring the storybook to life.
a. singer b. driver c. illustrator d. seller
76. My is full this week. I can't meet any client this week.
a. problem b. schedule c. accident d. idea
77. Teams must to succeed.
a. argue b. collaborate c. hide d. stop

Grammar

The Definite & Indefinite Articles

A - An

A	- تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد النكرة الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف ساكن
	a boy – a girl – a man – a woman – a hand – a lamp - a car - a farm .
	❖ قبل الاسم المفرد النكرة المبدوء بحرف U تنطق -U : - a one-way road اسم a uniform – a useful thing- a unit – a union – a united + a university – a European country universal - usual
An	❖ تستخدم قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف متحرك:
	an apple – an egg – an inkpot – an orange – an elephant.
	قبل الاسم المفرد المبدوء بحرف H الساكنة المتبوعة بحرف متحرك: an hour – an honest man – an x-ray- an heir وريث - an honourable man.

تستخدم أداة النكرة في الحالات الآتية:
1- قبل أي اسم مفرد يشير إلى واحد من مجموعة:

We've got a car. Every family has a computer.
a beautiful girl – an unpleasant book
I saw a man coming.

2 - قبل الصفة إن وجدت قبل الاسم المفرد - :

3 - تستخدم قبل الاسم عند ذكره لأول مرة

He is a teacher - My uncle is an engineer 4- لنشير إلى وظائف الأشخاص

5- تستخدم an/a في الجمل الدالة على التعجب قبل الاسم المفرد

What a clever student! -What an exciting film .!

6 -تستخدم an/a مع التعبيرات الدالة على العدد والتمن والسرعة وأدوات التجزئة والكميات

a dozen /a couple/ a pair /a thousand/ a hundred/a cup/ an hour /a lot

(an hour/a pair of shoes/ a couple of minutes/80 kilometers)

(a cold /a headache / a toothache/ a stomachache)

7- قبل أسماء بعض الأمراض الشائعة - :

8- قبل الجنسيات والصفات المتبوعة باسم مفرد

9 - لا نستخدم an / a قبل الأسماء الجمع أو الأسماء التي لا تعد ولا الأسماء المعنوية.

He is an English boy. I read an exciting story

Fish is my favourite food. I'm wearing black shoes.

تستخدم **the** في الحالات الآتية

كل اسم مميز لأنه فريد في الكون :

the sun – the sky – the earth – the world

كل اسم مميز لأنه فريد على وجه الأرض كأسماء المعالم الجغرافية الرئيسية ماعدا الجبال والجزر والبحيرات
والواحات المفردة: the River Nile – the Red sea – the High Dam – the Eiffel Tower – the Alps

I asked a question and the teacher replied.

❖ كل اسم مميز لأنه فريد في حيز ما :

❖ كل اسم نكرة جاء بعده ما يحدده كضمير وصل أو جار ومجرور أو تكرر في نفس الجملة:

The little girl in blue is Fatma.

This is the man who helped us yesterday.

I bought a book and a pencil but the book was broken.

The Internet- The radio

❖ مع السينما والمسرح والراديو والانترنت

❖ مع الاسماء الرسمي للبلاد إذا كانت تحتوي على:

the Arab Republic of Egypt –the Kwait State-the USA

❖ كل أسم مفرد يشير إلى الفكرة العامة يأخذ (the) وكذلك في التعريفات:

The lion is a fierce animal. The teacher is a person who works in a school.

The Holy Qur'an – The Bible – The Ten Commandments

❖ قبل الكتب المقدسة :

the seventies (1970s) – the sixties (1960s) السنين

❖ قبل العقود الزمنية:

first – second – third – morning – evening – afternoon

❖ قبل كلمات مثل :

❖ مع العبارات التي تشير للزمن والاتجاه وأجزاء الجسم

he present – the past – the back – the front – the body – the brain...

❖ مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ وأسماء الشوارع والأماكن المشهورة

the government – the police – the army – the United Nations – the climate – the weather – the press –
the Nasr Street – the Pyramids

❖ عندما نتحدث عن اكتشاف أو اختراع (ولكن تأخذ an / كأداة أو سلعة)

the telephone – the computer – the television – the plane

❖ مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ وأسماء الشوارع والأماكن المشهورة:

He plays / teaches / learns / listens to / practices the piano.

the tallest – the shortest – the oldest – the most

The more you eat, the fatter you become.

❖ مع جمل المقارنة:

the rich – the young – the dead – the living

مع الصفة في الدرجة الثالثة :

-The camel bears thirst. (All camels bear thirst)
-The giraffe has a long neck . - All giraffes have long necks

قبل اسم الحيوان المفرد لتشير إلى النوع
كله (ويأتي بعده الفعل في صيغة المفرد)

The problem of pollution

❖ مع أسماء بعض الأماكن و المباني التي يأتي معها

the cinema - the internet - the office, the radio theatre ,
the army , the post office, the police the government–
the United Nations –
climate – the weather – the press ...

قبل أسماء الفنادق والمسارح والنوادي والمطاعم ودور
السينما أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ

١١- تستخدم **the** قبل أسماء الأماكن التالية إذا استخدمت لغرضها الأساسي (للزيارة مثلاً)

(School – university – hospital –prison – mosque – church – market)

12- قبل أسماء البحار والمحيطات والأنهار والقنوات

**The Suez Canal-the Panama Canal- the Atlantic Ocean- the Amazon- the Indian Ocean-
The Mediterranean sea - The Red sea – the pacific ocean – the River Nile**

13 - قبل أسماء سلاسل الجبال ومجموعات البحيرات ومجموعات الجزر والصحاري والواحات

The Alps جبال الالب **The Himalayas** جبال الهمالايا - **The Andes** جبال الاندز - **The Great lakes** — **the siwa oasis**
The Caribbean islands جزر الكاريبي **the Bahamas** - جزر البهاما **the Sahara desert- the West Indias**
The western/eastern desert الصحراء الكبرى **the Sahara desert**

١٥- نستخدم **the** مع الجهات

The north of – The south of – The east of – The west of

١٦- نستخدم **the** مع أرقام الترتيب الآتية:

The only.....the last, the first, the second, the third, the fourth.....etc.

Ex: Asmaa was the only girl who attended the lesson.

١٧- مع الألقاب التي لم يذكر معها اسم **The queen / the prince/the king/the president/the professor:-**

❑ ولا نستخدم أي أداة في الحالات الآتية:

❖ مع الأسماء التي تعد في حالة الجمع بوجه عام ولكن عند التخصيص تأخذ (**the**)

men – children – vitamins – doctors – flowers – trees

❖ مع الأسماء التي لا تعد والمعنوية بشكل عام وتشمل

**milk – tea – coffee – bread
glass – wood – gold**

**أسماء الطعام والشراب
المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام**

**Basketball is not as popular as football. :
beauty – freedom, love, sadness, happiness
Science, History, English, Arabic
Arabic , English , French, Spanish
breakfast, lunch, dinner, supper**

❖ الألعاب الرياضية مثل
❖ الأسماء المجردة مثل :
❖ المواد الدراسية :
❖ أسماء اللغات :
قبل الوجبات (إلا في حالة الدعوة)

I invited my friend to the dinner. I had a big breakfast.

لاحظ

قبل الأماكن الآتية إذا كان الذهاب إليها أو استخدامها للغرض الذي أنشئت من أجله

school, bed, hospital, prison, court, church, mosque, college.

Ex: He went to hospital because he had eaten bad food .

ولكن نستخدم إذا كان الذهاب إليها لأغراض أخرى كالزيارة أو المقابلة

He went to the school to meet the headmaster.

Mr El Sebaei Atteya

131

01228699122

SOUVENIR

لا نضع **the** قبل **television** إذا قصدنا برامج التلفزيون

Ex: I watched a movie on television . - I usually watch TV in the evening

ولكن نضع **the** قبل **television** إذا قصدنا جهاز التلفزيون

Ex: He put the glass on the television . - Can you turn off the television, please?

ع - قبل أسم البحيرة المفردة أو الجبل المفرد أو الجزر المفردة.

Malta island Lake Nasser Mount Everest Mount Sinai جبل سيناء .

- قبل الصفات المشتقة من الجهات western – eastern – southern – northern

Ex: I visited southern America

٧ - قبل الشهور وفصول السنة وأيام الأسبوع

winter – spring – autumn – summer – January-Saturday- Monday

EXERCISES ON GRAMMAR

Choose the correct answer :

- 1-Yesterday, we had (a - an -the -no article) new test.
- 2-I got the information on (a - an -the -no article) internet.
- 3-I took a photo of my friend, but (a - an -the -no article) photo was so bad.
- 4-I usually eat (a - an -the -no article) apple for breakfast.
- 5-France is (a - an -the -no article) European country.
- 6-My brother spends hours talking on (a - an -the -no article) phone.
- 7-I didn't enjoy the match yesterday. (a - an -the -no article) referee was terrible
- 8-Yesterday, I went to (a - an -the -no article) library at school.
- 9-The rich should help (a - an -the -no article) poor.
- 10- My brother is in (a - an -the -no article) university in Cairo..
- 11-In fact, he's one of (a - an -the -no article) best doctors in our town.
- 12-(a - an -the -no article) town which I'm talking about is Fakous.
- 13-You shouldn't look at (a - an -the -no article) sun. It can damage your eyes.
- 14-Yesterday I found (a - an -the -no article) mobile phone in the road.
- 15-Hussein said that he lost (a - an -the -no article) phone which he had bought last week.
- 16-When I showed him (a - an -the -no article) phone that I'd found, he knew it.
- 17(A - An -The -No article) Nile is the longest river in the world.
- 18-Ali is(a - an -the -no article) honest man.
- 19-We live in (a - an -the -no article) old house near to the Nile
- 20-When I leave school, I want to be (a - an -the -no article) tourist guide
- 20.I had an interview for (a - an -the -no article) new job.
- 21.Samy had an interview for a job in (a - an -the -no article) office.
- 22-The company gave the job to someone (a - an -the -no article) year older than me
- 23(a - an -the -no article) mobile phone was invented in 1973
- 24.My brother is (a - an -the -no article) fastest swimmer in our school.
- 25-A banana is (a - an -the -no article) sweet yellow fruit that grows in hot countries.
- 26-(a - an -the -no article) sun is the star that gives the earth warmth and light.
- 27-The moon is a planet in (a - an -the -no article) sky.
- 28-The Sahara Desert is (a - an -the -no article) largest desert in the world.
- 29-When grandfather was young, hardly anyone had (a - an -the -no article) television.
- 30.Seventy years ago, only (a - an -the -no article) few rich people could afford a television.
- 31.Seventy years ago, most families had (a - an -the -no article) radio.
- 32.My sister had (a - an -the -no article) new baby boy last week.
33. I saw (a - an -the -no article) very big crocodile in the pond.
35. He comes from (a - an -the -no article) United States of America.
36. All tourists like to see (a - an -the -no article) pyramids.
37. I always have (a - an -the -no article) breakfast at home with my parents.
38. I had (a - an -the -no article) big breakfast this morning so I'm not hungry.
39. They stayed in (a - an -the -no article) wonderful hotel in Rome.
40. (a - an -the -no article) young can help to make Egypt better.
41. The horse is (a - an -the -no article) fast animal.

42. The horse is (a - an -the -no article) fastest animal.
43. Horses are (a - an -the -no article) fast animals.
44. The tiger is a member of (a - an -the -no article) cat family.
45. Have you seen (a - an -the -no article) moon tonight?
46. Can I have (a - an -the -no article) orange not two?
47. Do you like (a - an -the -no article) orange or blue?
48. Doctors examine (a - an -the -no article) sick people.
- 49- Mahmoud went to a school in Cairo (a - an -the -no article) school was very big
- 50- This is (a - an -the -no article) first time that the tourists have seen the Pyramids.
51. Do you know where (a - an -the -no article) dog is?
52. My father is (a - an -the -no article) doctor and works in a hospital
53. I saw (a - an -the -no article) accident this morning.

Rewrite the following sentences to give the same meaning:

- 1.He is hard working. (a)
- 2.This film is exciting. (an)
- 3.People in Egypt like falafel. (The.....)
- 4.Cairo is Egypt's capital. (the)
5. I ate some bread. (a) (three)
- 6.My father's job is to teach students. (a)
- 7.Mr El Sebaei has a villa with a short wall around it . (the)
- 8.I ate a very nice meal. (The.....)
- 9.There are a lot of temples in southern Egypt. (south)
- 10.Ali saw a road accident yesterday. (an)

Exercises on units (5 and 6)

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences

1. I thinkexams we have next week will be very difficult.
a. no article b. the c. an d. much
2. At night we can see the moon in..... sky.
a. an b. a c. the d. no article
3. I've made..... new friend recently.
a. no article b. a c. an d. many
4.exams are always stressful for me.
a. The b. A c. No article d. An
5. I need..... advice about how to make new friends.
a. an b. some c. the d. a
6. What time isMaths lesson this afternoon?
a. some b. an c. a d. the
7. I can't come out tonight because I have.....exam tomorrow.
a. the b. an c. a d. no
8. Would you like more sugar?
a. many b. a few c. some d. a
9. I hope..... exam we are going to have tomorrow will be easy.
a. an b. a c. the d. no article
10. women play an important role in society.
a. No article b. The c. An d. A
11. Don't worry; I can help you. I have..... money than you expect.
a. enough b. more c. less d. fewer
12. My father is an accountant at..... furniture factory.
a. an b. no article c. the d. a
13. There are books available; we have 4 and we need at least 20.
a. less b. many c. few d. a few
14. Spain isEuropean country.
a. an b. the c. no article d. a
15. I am very busy; I have..... to do today.
a. little b. many c. a lot of d. a lot
16. I will never forgetlunch I had with my friends on the beach last month.
a. an b. the c. no article d. a
17. Avoid dealing with bad boys; it's better to be alone than in..... bad company.

- a. an b. the c. no article d. a
18. How..... rice do you want? - Just two kilos.
- a. many b. much c. few d. a few
19. I've..... money in my pocket. Would you pay for my coffee?
- a. few b. a little c. many d. little
20. There is plenty of meat in the fridge, but there is not..... butter.
- a. few b. many c. much d. a lot
21. England and France areEuropean countries.
- a. a b. the c. an d. no article
22. My father went to..... school to meet my teachers.
- a. an b. the c. no article d. a
- 23..... children don't like schools because they want to play all the time.
- a. Lots of b. Lots c. Much d. Any
24. Walking towork is part of my daily routine.
- a. a b. an c. the d. no article
25. A: Howcoffee did you drink? - B: Only one cup, please.
- a. many b. much c. few d. little
26. Your jeans..... rather old. You need to buy a new pair.
- a. is b. have c. are d. has been
27. It's known that..... Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- a. an b. a c. the d. no article
28. Did your brother get..... job he applied for a month ago?
- a. the b. an c. a d. no article
29.there any information about Covid-19 in this book?
- a. Are b. Have c. were d. Is
30. We don't have much water. We only haveto drink.
- a. a lot b. a little c. many d. a few
31. Physicsmy favourite school subject when I was a school boy.
- a. were b. are c. was d. is
32. If you fail once, never lose..... hope.
- a. a b. the c. an d. no article
33. I want to photocopy this document but the machine is out of
- a. papers b. paper c. the paper d. a paper
34. He left home without..... money, so he had to borrow some.
- a. much b. many c. a lot d. few
35. He hasEnglish name, but he is really Egyptian.
- a. the b. no article c. a d. an
36. There isn'ttraffic on the ring road today.
- a. few b. many c. much d. little
37. He had a dream last night. Indream, he was lying under a tree.
- a. an b. the c. a d. no article
38. Last summer, my friends and I travelled toUSA.
- a. the b. a c. an d. no article
39. There were only..... people at the meeting because the weather was extremely bad.
- a. many b. a lot of c. a little d. a few
40. The tour guide gave ususeful information about the Pyramids.
- a. many b. a lot of c. few d. a few
41. Could I havemilk, please?
- a. some b. a few c. few d. many
42. I told the customs officer that I didn't have..... luggage.
- a. many b. plenty c. much d. few
43. One of the team membersusually aggressive.
- a. are b. was c. has d. were
44. My luggage being searched by the customs officer at the moment.
- a. were b. are c. was d. is
45. I can't help you now because I have work to do.
- a. few b. little c. much d. many
46. Which of the following sentences structurally correct?
- a. I need few sugar in my coffee b. I need some sugar in my coffee.

- c. I need many sugar in my coffee. d. I need a sugar in my coffee.
47. Which of the following sentences is structurally correct?
- a. There are a lot cars on the road today. b. There are a little cars on the road today.
- c. There are a few cars on the road today. d. There are much cars on the road today.
48. People who don't have..... passion don't succeed.
- a. many b. a lot c. a few d. much
49. Not entrepreneurs succeed unless they're prepared to work hard.
- a. a few b. many c. a little d. a lot
50.public places had water fountains where people could get fresh water.
- a. Each b. A lot c. Many d. Much

Lesson 5

Curriculum Vitae (CV)

A CV (Curriculum Vitae) is a document that summarizes your education, work experience, skills, and achievements. It's usually the first thing an employer sees about you, so it needs to make a good impression!

Key points about CVs:

Key points about CVs:

- Keep it short (1-2 pages maximum) - Use clear, simple language
- Include only relevant information
- Make it easy to read
- Update it regularly

~~~~~

### Structure of a good CV

Read the following steps for writing a good CV

#### 1. Personal Information

- Full name                      • Phone number                      • Email address                      • City and country
- LinkedIn profile (optional)

#### 2. Personal Statement/Objective

- A short paragraph (2-3 sentences) describing who you are and what you want to achieve.

#### 3. Education

List your qualifications in reverse chronological order (most recent first).

Format:

- Dates      • Qualification/Degree                      • Institution                      • Grades (if good)

#### 4. Work Experience

Include all relevant jobs, internships, and volunteer work.

Format:

- Dates      • Job title                      • Company name                      • Key responsibilities and achievements

#### 5. Skills

- Technical skills (computer programs, languages)
- Soft skills (communication, teamwork, leadership) • Language skills with proficiency levels

#### 6. Additional Sections (if relevant)

- Certifications                      • Projects                      • Interests/Hobbies                      • References

Choose the correct answers:

1. A CV is a document that summarizes your \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) hobbies only                      b) travel plans                      c) education and experience                      d) dreams
2. A CV should make a good \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) joke                      b) impression                      c) problem                      d) argument



3. A CV should be \_\_\_\_\_ pages maximum.

- a) 1-2                      b) 5-6                      c) 10                      d) less than 1

4. The language in a CV should be \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) complicated                      b) clear and simple                      c) slang                      d) poetic

5. Your CV should include \_\_\_\_\_ information.

- a) all                      b) only relevant                      c) random                      d) secret

6. You should \_\_\_\_\_ your CV regularly.

- a) hide                      b) delete                      c) update                      d) forget

7. The first section of a CV is usually \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) hobbies                      b) references                      c) personal information                      d) conclusion

8. Personal information includes \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) favorite movie                      b) email and phone                      c) pets' names                      d) places visited

9. A personal statement is usually \_\_\_\_\_ sentences.

- a) 10                      b) 6-7                      c) 2-3                      d) 0

10. Education should be listed in \_\_\_\_\_ order.

- a) alphabetical                      b) reverse chronological                      c) random                      d) by age

11. Education section must include \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) grades only                      b) school lunch menu                      c) dates and degree                      d) favorite teacher

12. Work experience includes \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) games played                      b) internships and jobs                      c) movies watched                      d) nothing

13. Work experience should show \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) achievements                      b) colors                      c) songs                      d) jokes

14. Skills include \_\_\_\_\_ skills.

- a) swimming only                      b) technical & soft                      c) only speaking                      d) dancing

15. Language skills should show your \_\_\_\_\_ level.

- a) color                      b) height                      c) proficiency                      d) nickname

16. Technical skills include \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) computer programs                      b) sleeping                      c) shopping                      d) whistling

17. Soft skills include \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) running                      b) teamwork and communication                      c) eating                      d) singing

18. An additional section can include \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) weather report                      b) certifications                      c) your favorite car                      d) jokes

19. Hobbies in a CV should be \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) realistic and useful                      b) fake                      c) funny only                      d) secret

20. A CV is usually sent to \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) friends                      b) employers                      c) classmates                      d) animals

## CHAPTER 6

### The Sharks Arrive

The morning sun rose as Santiago's small skiff sailed steadily toward the shore. The giant marlin was tied beside the boat, its silver body shining in the light. Santiago, though proud, felt uneasy. The sea was never generous without asking for something in return. He knew the scent of blood would call predators.

And then he saw it: a dark shadow moving swiftly beneath the surface. **A shark.**

It was a mako shark, fast and strong, following the marlin's trail of blood. Santiago's heart tightened. "**So, it begins,**" he muttered. He took up his harpoon, though his hands were raw and shaking. The shark came closer, its sharp teeth glinting as it attacked the marlin's side.

With all the strength left in him, Santiago drove the harpoon down into the shark's head. The iron struck deep, and the shark thrashed violently, turning the sea red. Finally, it sank, dead, into the depths.

But the victory was bitter. The marlin had lost a great piece of flesh, and blood flowed freely from its wound. Santiago looked at his catch with sorrow. "**They will come now,**

one after another,” he said.

He was right. Before long, more shadows appeared. A pair of galanos—shovel-nosed sharks—rose from the deep. They were slower but insistent. They bit at the marlin, tearing away its flesh. Santiago fought with his harpoon until it broke off in a shark’s body. Now, he tied his knife to an oar and used it as a spear. He stabbed and slashed, killing one shark and driving the other away. But each battle cost him strength, and the marlin’s body grew smaller, its beauty ruined.

As the hours passed, more sharks came. The smell of blood had spread far through the sea. Santiago fought them all, his arms burning, his vision blurring. He killed several but knew he could not stop them forever.

By afternoon, the marlin was only half a fish. Its head and backbone remained, but much of its flesh was gone. Santiago leaned against the mast, breathing heavily. “I was beaten,” he whispered, “but only by sharks, not by the fish.” Still, he did not surrender. Every time a new shark attacked, he stood up and fought. He swung the oar-spear until it splintered, then used the tiller, then even the broken pieces of wood. He was an old man with nothing left but his will.

Night fell again, and Santiago was exhausted beyond words. The marlin was now only a skeleton, stripped of nearly all its meat. But Santiago kept sailing toward home, his spirit unbroken.

“I fought for the marlin as long as I could,” he said aloud to the stars. “He was too noble to be lost without a fight.”

At last, silence returned. No more sharks came. The marlin’s skeleton glowed white in the moonlight, its long sword rising like a banner of both triumph and tragedy.

Santiago looked at it and felt tears in his eyes. “You were my greatest enemy and my greatest friend,” he told the fish. “They destroyed you, but they could not destroy my pride. We fought well.”

He thought of the boy, and a faint smile touched his lips. “The boy will not let me be alone again,” he said. “Tomorrow, he will help me. He must.”

Santiago steered the little skiff through the dark waters, his body broken but his spirit still alive. He had lost his catch, but he had not lost his dignity.

The sea was quiet again, carrying the old man and the skeleton of the marlin slowly toward the shore.

## Questions and answers

### 1. Why did Santiago feel uneasy even after catching the marlin?

لماذا شعر سانتياغو بعدم الارتياح رغم أنه اصطاد المارلين؟

As he knew the sea always demanded a price, and the blood would attract sharks.

لأنه كان يعلم أن البحر يطلب ثمنًا دائمًا، وأن الدم سيجذب أسماك القرش.

### 2. What does the first shark symbolize?

ماذا يرمز أول قرش؟

It symbolizes the beginning of Santiago’s real struggle after victory.

يمثل بداية الصراع الحقيقي بعد النصر.

### 3. Why did Santiago fight the first shark with all his strength?

لماذا قاتل سانتياغو القرش الأول بكل قوته؟

Because he wanted to protect the marlin and his honor.

لأنه أراد حماية السمكة وشرفه.

### 4. How did Santiago feel after killing the first shark?

كيف شعر سانتياغو بعد قتل القرش الأول؟

**He felt sad because the marlin was damaged despite the victory.**

شعر بالحزن لأن السمكة تضررت رغم النصر.

**5. Why did Santiago say, "They will come now"?**

لماذا قال سانتياغو: "سوف يأتون الآن"؟

**He knew more sharks would be drawn to the blood.**

كان يعلم أن المزيد من القروش سيأتي بسبب الدم.

**6. Why did Santiago tie a knife to an oar?**

لماذا ربط سانتياغو سكيناً بمجذاف؟

**Because he lost his harpoon and needed a new weapon.**

لأنه فقد حربيته وكان بحاجة إلى سلاح جديد.

**7. Why does Santiago keep fighting even when he is exhausted?**

لماذا استمر سانتياغو في القتال حتى وهو مرهق؟

**Because his pride and spirit would not allow him to give up.**

لأن كبريائه وروحه لم يسمحا له بالاستسلام.

**8. What does the increasing number of sharks show?**

ماذا يدل ازدياد عدد القروش؟

**That nature always tests strength and victory.**

أن الطبيعة تختبر القوة والنصر دائماً.

**9. Why was Santiago's fight called a "bitter victory"?**

لماذا سُميت معركة سانتياغو "نصراً مرّاً"؟

**He killed sharks but lost most of the marlin.**

قتل القروش لكنه فقد معظم السمكة.

**10. What does the marlin's destruction represent?**

ماذا يمثل تدمير المارلين؟

**The cost of great achievement.**

ثمن الإنجاز العظيم.

**11. Why did Santiago say he was defeated only by sharks?**

لماذا قال سانتياغو إنه هُزم فقط على يد القروش؟

**Because he beat the fish but could not stop nature's enemies.**

لأنه هزم السمكة لكنه لم يتمكن من إيقاف أعداء الطبيعة.

**12. Why did Santiago continue fighting even when the marlin was mostly gone?**

لماذا استمر سانتياغو في القتال رغم أن معظم السمكة كان قد ذهب؟

**He fought to protect his dignity, not just the fish.**

قاتل ليحمي كرامته، وليس فقط السمكة.

**13. What shows Santiago's determination?**

ما الذي يظهر إصرار سانتياغو؟

**He fought with wood pieces when weapons were gone.**

قاتل بقطع الخشب عندما نفدت الأسلحة.

**14. Why did Santiago talk to the fish?**

لماذا تحدث سانتياغو إلى السمكة؟

**Because he felt a deep connection and respect for it.**

لأنه شعر بعلاقة عميقة واحترام لها.

**15. What feeling did Santiago have toward the marlin at the end?**

ما الشعور الذي كان لدى سانتياغو تجاه المارلين في النهاية؟

**Pride and sorrow.**

فخر وحزن.

**16. Why did Santiago cry at the end?**

لماذا بكى سانتياغو في النهاية؟

**Because the marlin was destroyed despite his efforts.**

لأن السمكة دُمّرت رغم جهوده.

**17. What did the glowing skeleton symbolize?**

ماذا رمز الهيكل اللامع؟

**Noble defeat and lasting pride.**

هزيمة نبيلة وفخر دائم.

**18. Why did Santiago think of the boy?**

لماذا فكر سانتياغو في الصبي؟

Because he hoped for support and company.

لأنه كان يأمل في الدعم والرفقة.

**19. Why was Santiago not ashamed of returning with only a skeleton?**

لماذا لم يشعر سانتياغو بالخجل عندما عاد بهيكل السمكة فقط؟

Because he fought bravely and never gave up.

لأنه قاتل بشجاعة ولم يستسلم.

**20. Why did the marlin become a symbol of Santiago's struggle?**

لماذا أصبحت سمكة المارلين رمزًا لصراع سانتياغو؟

It represented his greatest challenge and effort.

مثلت أكبر تحدٍ له وجهوده العظيمة.

**21. Why did the sea go silent at last?**

لماذا سكوت البحر في النهاية؟

The struggle was over; nature accepted the end.

انتهى الصراع؛ والطبيعة قبلت النهاية.

**22. Why did Santiago feel proud despite losing the marlin's meat?**

لماذا شعر سانتياغو بالفخر رغم خسارته لحم السمكة؟

His spirit and dignity remained untouched.

بقيت روحه وكرامته دون أن تُمس.

**23. What trait does Santiago show throughout?**

ما الصفة التي يظهرها سانتياغو طوال القصة؟

Courage and endurance.

الشجاعة والتحمل.

**24. Why did Santiago fight so desperately?**

لماذا قاتل سانتياغو بياس شديد؟

He fought to defend what he earned through hard struggle.

قاتل ليحمي ما كسبه بصراع طويل.

**25. Why did Santiago say the boy would help him?**

لماذا قال سانتياغو إن الصبي سيساعده؟

He believed good companionship would return.

كان يعتقد أن الصحبة الجيدة ستعود.

**26. Why is the marlin called Santiago's greatest friend?**

لماذا تُسمى المارلين أعظم صديق لسانتياغو؟

They shared a noble battle.

لأنهما شاركا في معركة نبيلة.

**27. Why does the story call the marlin "noble"?**

لماذا وصفت القصة المارلين بأنه نبيل؟

It fought bravely and with dignity.

لأنه قاتل بشجاعة وكرامة.

**28. What kept Santiago going despite pain and loss?**

ما الذي جعل سانتياغو يستمر رغم الألم والخسارة؟

His strong will and pride.

قوته الداخلية وكبرياؤه.

**29. Why does Santiago say "I fought for him as long as I could"?**

لماذا قال سانتياغو: "قاتلت من أجله ما استطعت"؟

He wanted to honor the marlin in life and death.

أراد أن يُكرم السمكة في حياتها وبعد موتها.

**30. What does Santiago's final return symbolize?**

ماذا ترمز عودة سانتياغو الأخيرة؟

A hero's return after a tragic victory.

عودة بطل بعد نصر مأساوي.

# Some skills

دعنا نتدرب علي مهاره اختيار الترجمة الصحيحة

اولا نبدأ انجليزي عربي

اقرأ الجملة الاتيه جيدا:

1-All parents should have an effective role in pushing and encouraging their children to share in their country's development .

**للطلبة و الطالبات المحترفين وليس الهبيده**

**١- حاول تحدد الكلمات الصعبة وتضع تحتها خط**

٢- ترجم الجملة اولاً وحاول تكتبة ثم اقرأ الجمل المتاحة وحاول التركيز عند الاختيار

١- يجب أن يكون لجميع الآباء دور فعال في دفع وتحفيز أطفالهم على المشاركة في تنمية بلدنا

٢- يجب أن يكون جميع الآباء دور فعال في دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم على المشاركة في تنمية بلدهم  
انظر لتلك الجمل و اكتشف الخطأ في **الاولي** مثلاً

**الخطأ في الاولي لاحظ :**

كلمه **encourage** مكتوبه يحفز ولكن ترجمتها هي ( **يشجع**) ايضاً لاحظ اخر كلمة في الجملة ( الكلمة انجليزي) **their country** ولكن الترجمة ( بلدنا) إذن الجملة بها خطأ

**هل الثانية صحيحة؟**

اكتشف الخطأ لاحظت شيء الفعل (have) ليس موجود في الترجمة لكنه موجود في الجملة الاولي خطأ بسيط ولكنه جعل الجمل غير مفهومة

**الاجابه الصحيحه كالتالي**

١- يجب أن يكون لجميع الآباء دور فعال في دفع وتشجيع أطفالهم على المشاركة في تنمية بلدهم  
نحرب جملة ثانيه مرتبطه بالوحدة

**Ecotourism is considered a good source of national income in Egypt as Egypt has more and more isolated natural places that tourists like to visit.**

١- تعتبر السياحة مصدراً جيداً للدخل القومي في مصر حيث يوجد لمصر المزيد والمزيد من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التي يحب السياح زيارتها.

٢- تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدراً جيداً للدخل القومي في مصر لان مصر بها المزيد من الأماكن الطبيعية المعروفة التي يحب السياح زيارتها

**انظر للترجمة نمرة ٣ علشان تشوف الفرق**

٣- تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدراً جيداً للدخل القومي في مصر **حيث** يوجد في مصر المزيد والمزيد من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التي يحب السياح زيارتها

**عرفت نمرة ٣ صح ليه**

**اقول حاجه الثلاثه جمل خطأ لاحظ معايا واحدة واحدة**

١- بها السياحه بدون البيئية وكم ان كلمة **as** الافضل يكون معناها لان والمعني بعدها لا يتماشى مع لان

٢- بها خطأين الاول **and more** ليست مترجمه وايضا كلمة **isolated** مترجمه خطأ

٣- المفروض تكون صح مثل المثال الاول ولكن لاحظت ان كلمة **natural** مترجمه الطبيعية

**اذن الصح**

تعتبر السياحة البيئية مصدراً جيداً للدخل القومي في مصر حيث يوجد في مصر المزيد والمزيد من الأماكن الطبيعية المعزولة التي يحب السياح زيارتها

**اتكل علي الله وجرب بنفسك اول تمارين من اختارين فقط**

**بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ** توكلنا علي الله

**1- Keeping the environment clean has become a necessity. Therefore, both individuals and governments must cooperate to create a healthy and clean environment .**

1. أصبح الحفاظ على نظافة البيئة ضرورة. لذلك ، كلاهما يجب على الأفراد والحكومات التعاون لابتداع بيئة صحية ونظيفة

2. أصبح الحفاظ على نظافة البيئة ضرورة. لذلك ، فيجب على كلا من الأفراد والحكومات التعاون لخلق بيئة صحية ونظيفة

**2. Reading is a means to develop culture, get useful knowledge during spare time**

**Mr El Sebaei Atteya**

**140**

**01228699122**

**SOUVENIR**



and practice sport that helps to keep our physical fitness and renews energy.

١. القراءة وسيلة لتطوير الثقافة ، والحصول على المعرفة المفيدة في أوقات الفراغ وممارسة الرياضة التي تساعد في الحفاظ على لياقتنا البدنية وتجدد طاقتنا
٢. القراءة تعني تطوير الثقافة ، والحصول على المعرفة الجيدة في أوقات الفراغ وممارسة الرياضة التي تساعد في الحفاظ على لياقتنا البدنية وتجدد طاقتنا
٣. القراءة وسيلة لتطوير الثقافة ، والحصول على المعرفة المفيدة في أوقات الفراغ وممارسة الرياضة التي تساعد في حفظ لياقتنا البدنية وتنشئ طاقتنا

**3. Doctors have proved that those who don't smoke at all live a longer and healthier life. Therefore, the number of those who smoke has greatly decreased**

١. أثبت الأطباء أن أولئك الذين يدخنون على كثيرًا يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة. لذلك ، زاد عدد المدخنين بشكل كبير
٢. أثبت الأطباء أن أولئك الذين لا يدخنون مطلقًا يعيشون حياة أطول وصحية. لذلك ، انخفض عدد المدخنين بشكل كبير
٣. أثبت الأطباء أن أولئك الذين لا يدخنون على الإطلاق يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة. لذلك ، انخفض عدد المدخنين بشكل كبير
٤. أثبت الأطباء أن الذين لا يدخنون على الإطلاق يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة. لذلك ، انخفض عدد المدخنين كثيرًا

النتيجة كام من ٦ درجات لان الترجمة عليها درجتان خلي عندك ضمير  
التدريب علي عربي انجليزي الوحده الثانيه باذن الله

Essay writing

Skills

Writing

كيف تكتب مقال باللغة الإنجليزية؟

**عليك اتباع التعليمات التالية:**

- ١- الخطوة الاولى تتمثل في تحديد موضوع المقال هل هو موضوع ايجابي او سلبي او مميزات و عيوب او موضوع عام.
- ٢- لابد من عمل مسودة في اخر صفحة من ورقة الاجابة وبدء كتابة كل الجمل التي تستطيع كتابة دون ترتيب او تنسيق مع العلم اننا يمكننا الاستفادة من القطع او الترجمة او باقي الاسئلة في الامتحان في كتابة الموضوع.
- ٣- اكتب عنوان المقال في منتصف السطر وضع خطأً بالقلم الرصاص تحته.
- ٤- اترك مسافة بادئة **indentation** في أول سطر من موضوعك ما يعادل خمسة احرف بداية كل فقرة.
- ٥- ابدأ جملتك دائماً بـ capital letter وقم بإنهاء الجملة بـ **full stop**. والافضل استخدام الروابط بين الجمل.
- ٦- ابدأ موضوعك بـ **topic sentence** أي جملة رئيسية تحتوي في مجملها علي تلخيص الفكرة العامة للموضوع.
- ٧- اترك مسافة واضحة بين الكلمة والأخرى. و يفضل ترك سطر في الكتابة
- ٨- حسن خطك قدر الإمكان ولا بد أن تكتب ما لا يقل عن ١٥٠ كلمة.
- ٩- عندما تنتهي من جملة لا تكتب الجملة التالية في سطر جديد منفصل بل قم بوضع **full stop** وابدأ جملتك الجديدة في نفس السطر.
- ١٠- حاول الابتعاد قدر الإمكان عن أي تعبيرات أو كلمات صعبة حتى لا تقع في الخطأ. يمكنك كتابة موضوع أنيق بكلمات بسيطة حفظتها أنت جيداً.
- ١١- الشكل العام للكتابة هي الطريقة للوصول الي اعلي الدرجات في البراجراف .
- ١٢- تناسب زمن الجملة مع سياق الموضوع ومراعاة الأخطاء الهجائية (**Spelling mistakes**) .
- ١٣- حاول تجميع افكار رئيسية للموضوع و عمل **Main points** .
- ١٤- الالمام بقدر كبير من الكلمات و المصطلحات و التعبيرات الشائعة مع حفظ الروابط التي تستخدم بين الجمل.
- ١٥- مراعاة الترابط والتنسيق بين جمل و أفكار الموضوع .
- ١٦- تجنب الجمل الطويلة بشكل عام. وأن تختار الكلمات المناسبة للتعبير عن الفكرة وتجنب استخدام الكلمات الغريبة

الأجزاء الرئيسية للمقال The main parts of the essay

## 1) Introduction المقدمة

❖ هي الفقرة الأولى في المقال وتطرح الفكرة أو الهدف من كتابة الموضوع، وكيف يتم عرض الأفكار.  
بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات الإيجابية  
بالنسبة للطالب الذي لا يجيد الكتابة، هناك مقدمات يمكن أن تساعدك مثل:

► We all agree that ... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.

نتفق جميعاً أن ... واحد من أهم الأشياء في حياتنا وله دوراً حيوياً هذه الأيام.

► We all agree that ... is (are) very necessary and plays (play) an important part in our life.

► No one can deny that ... plays a very important role in our life.

لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن ... يلعب دوراً هاماً في حياتنا.

► There is no doubt that this subject has affected our thought and caused a great impact on us.

لا شك أن هذا الموضوع قد أثر على فكرنا وأحدث تأثيراً علينا.

بعض الجمل الافتتاحية التي تصلح لموضوعات المقالات السلبية

► There is no doubt that ... is one of the most dangerous phenomena in our life and has its bad and negative effects nowadays.

مما لا شك فيه أن ... هي واحدة من أخطر الظواهر في حياتنا وكذلك له أثاره السيئة والسلبية في وقتنا هذا.

## 2) Body: الموضوع (الجزء الرئيسي)

لا بد من تقسيم الموضوع لعدد من الأفكار. وتحدث عن كل فكرة في فقرة مستقلة. استخدم جمل بسيطة وواضحة.

## (3) Conclusion: الخاتمة (الخلاصة)

غالباً ما تتضمن فقرة الخاتمة ملخصاً للأفكار التي تم التعبير عنها أو النتيجة التي وصلت إليها.

هذه النتيجة قد تكون نصيحة أو تحذير أو إعطاء رأي أو غيره.

بعض الجمل الختامية التي يمكن استخدامها في الفقرات الختامية للمقال

Finally, it is quite clear that ... is really ...

To sum up, one can say that ... is really ...

We all agree that ..... is one of the most important things in our life and has its vital role nowadays.

نتفق جميعاً أن ..... واحد من الأشياء المهمة في حياتنا وله دوراً حيوياً هذه الأيام.

We should put into consideration that ..... has become one of the most important things in everyone's life.

يجب أن نضع في الاعتبار أن ..... قد أصبح واحداً من أهم الأشياء في حياة كل شخص.

No one can deny that we owe much to ..... which play(s) an important role and active part in our life.

لا ينكر أحد أننا ندين بالكثير ل ..... الذي يلعب دوراً هاماً وفعالاً في حياتنا.

## For negative themes لموضوعات سلبية

We all see that...stands as an obstacle in the way of our progress.

نرى جميعاً أن ..... يقف كعقبة أمام طريق تقدمنا.

There is no doubt that ..... is one of the most dangerous problems in our life as it has bad effects on us.

مما لا شك فيه أن ..... واحدة من أخطر المشاكل في حياتنا لأنها لها آثار سيئة علينا.

We all believe that ..... is really serious and harmful nowadays and has bad effects on all of us.

نعتقد جميعاً أن ..... خطيراً و ضاراً هذه الأيام وله آثار سيئة علينا جميعاً.

## For advantages and disadvantages themes لموضوعات مزدوجة

There is no doubt that ..... is a double edge

مما لا شك فيه أن ..... يعتبر سلاح ذو حدين لما له من مميزات وعيوب.

weapon that has both advantages and disadvantages.

In fact that ..... is considered a mixed blessing in our life.

حقيقة أن.....يعتبر سلاح نعمة ونقمة في وقت واحد في حياتنا.

ماذا عن صلب الموضوع؟ What about the body?

يمكنك استخدام هذه الروابط للربط بين الجمل

|                          |                  |                       |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| on one hand              | من ناحية         | one the other hand    | من ناحية أخرى    |
| in addition to that      | بالإضافة إلى ذلك | moreover              | علاوة على ذلك    |
| hence                    | ومن ثم           | at the same time      | في نفس الوقت     |
| and as a result of this, | ونتيجة لذلك      | more than that        | أكثر من ذلك      |
| over and above           | مضافا إلى ذلك    | consequently          | نتيجة لذلك       |
| there is no doubt that   | مما لا شك فيه    | last but not least    | وأخيرا وليس آخرا |
| as far as i am concerned | كما أراي         | another thing is that | شيء آخر هو ان    |

الجملة التالية يمكن ان توضع وسط الموضوع لربط المقدمة بالموضوع الرئيسي وهي تناسب جميع الموضوعات.

- In addition to what I have written about .....before, I can add that.....

ابدأ جملتك بالعبارات التالية للتوكيد

|                                           |                           |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Everyone knows that + جملة                | الجميع يعرفون أن          |
| I reveal no secret when I say that + جملة | لا افشى سرا عندما أقول ان |
| It can't be denied that + جملة            | لا احد يمكنه ان ينكر ان   |
| It is crystal clear that + جملة           | من الواضح تماما أن        |
| It is known that + جملة                   | من المعروف أن             |

ماذا عن الخاتمة؟ What about the conclusion?

الخاتمة إيجابي أو سلبي

From what we have mentioned above we can say that due attention must be paid to this matter never be neglected as it is very **important (serious)**.

← مما ذاكرنه اعلي يمكننا القول ان يجب ان نولي اهتمامنا و نوجهه نحو هذا الموضوع و لا نتجاهله لما له من أهمية (خطورة).

← ربما تساعدك الجمل الآتية في كتابة الموضوعات المختلفة:

- 1) No one can deny that.... لا أحد يستطيع أن ينكر أن
- 2) plays a great role in تلعب دورا كبيرا في
- 3) The progress of any nation depends on إن تقدم أي أمة يعتمد علي
- 4) We should do our best in order to يجب أن نفعل ما بوسعنا لكي
- 5) In my opinion, ..has a great effect on our society. من رأي ان .....له تأثير كبير علي المجتمع
- 6) We can't ignore the great value of لا نستطيع أن نتجاهل القيمة العظيمة لـ
- 7) The government does its best to encourage تبذل الحكومة ما بوسعها لتشجيع
- 8) The government is trying to solve this problem by... تحاول الحكومة حل هذه المشكلة عن طريق
- 9) One advantage of .....is that it (they) أحد مزايا .. هي أنها..
- 10) One disadvantage of .....is that it (they) أحد عيوب .. هي أنها..
- 11) .....is considered a very serious problem. ..تعتبر مشكلة خطيرة
- 12) To solve this problem, we should all لحل هذه المشكلة يجب علينا جميعا أن
- 13) We all agree that .....is one of the most important things in our life نتفق جميعنا علي أن .. هو أهم شيء في حياتنا
- 14) .....is very useful as it helps us to... ..مفيد للغاية حيث أنه يساعدنا في ..
- 15) With the help of .....we can lead a better life بمساعدة .. يمكننا أن نحيا حياة أفضل
- 16) .....is a serious obstacle in the way of our progress تمثل عقبة خطيرة في طريق تقدمنا
- 17) All members of the society should cooperate to ... كل أفراد المجتمع يجب أن يتعاونوا لكي

- |                                                             |                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 18) We should exert more efforts to solve this problem      | يجب أن نبذل المزيد من الجهود لحل هذه المشكلة |
| 19) We have to stand firmly against .....                   | يجب أن نقف بحزم ضد                           |
| 20) We should make the best use of .....                    | يجب أن نحقق أقصى استفادة من                  |
| 21) will help us to achieve self sufficiency                | سوف يساعدنا علي تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتي        |
| 22) We should develop public awareness of.....              | يجب أن ننمي الوعي العام بـ                   |
| 23) All citizens should participate in solving this problem | يجب أن يشارك كل المواطنين في حل هذه المشكلة  |
| 24) It increases our national income.                       | يزيد من الدخل القومي                         |
| 25) It achieves progress, welfare and prosperity.           | يحقق التقدم والرفاهية والرخاء                |

### Why tourism is important for Egypt.

Tourism is the second earner of foreign currency for Egypt. Millions of tourists come from all over the world to visit Egypt every year. They come to Egypt for many reasons. They want to enjoy the warmth of the weather and visit all ancient monuments.

Tourism has many advantages for our country. It is a main source to increase national income and develop national economy. Tourists add a lot of money to the income of our country. They spend money on flights, hotels, museums, restaurants and transport. This provides our country with hard currency and provides jobs for the unemployed. Tourism is also important to make visitors know more about our history, culture, customs, traditions and language.

We should increase the number of people visiting Egypt every year by fighting terrorism which is tourism's great enemy. We have to be civilized and friendly to tourists. The government should set up modern hotels and offer accommodations at reasonable prices. Last, but not least, it is a must that we do our best to benefit from tourism.

### حان وقت التدريب

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY (150 words) on ONE (1) of the following:

- |                                                                |                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. My role model                                               |                              |
| 2. The role played by charitable organizations in our society. |                              |
| 3-The pros and cons of social media.                           |                              |
| 4- What can you do to help your community?                     | 5. The value of co-operation |
| 6-The job you dream of doing in the future.                    | 7-Team work.                 |
| 8-How to choose a true friend.                                 |                              |
| 9-How to encourage tourism in your country                     |                              |
| 10-pollution in your city or village                           |                              |
| 11-Education helps to make your life better.                   |                              |
| 12-The qualities of a good writer                              |                              |
| 13. The importance of sports in our life"                      |                              |